

KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
OCCUPY POSITION		
CONDITION(S):	Advance party has completed the reconnaissance, selection, and preparation of new position. The main body has arrived at the release point.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Crosses release point at specified time.
2		Maintains security during occupation.
3		Follows track plan during occupation.
4		Vehicle guides, order of march, and routes into the new position facilitate rapid occupation.
5		Positions vehicle(s) to allow for rapid displacement.
6		Battalion maintains continuous command and control of subordinate units. (KI)
7		Positive control of firing units is maintained throughout the passing of control between the main and forward command posts.
8		Designated sites are occupied.
9		Positions are improved as mission and time permit.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Either the main or forward headquarters echelon must maintain positive control.	
PLAN AND COORDINATE UNIT DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is required to displace while conducting tactical operations. Battery and battalion position areas have been selected.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Movement is planned which supports the scheme of maneuver of the supported unit and is coordinated through the supported unit.
2		Security requirements, time available to move, other traffic restrictions, enemy activity, and coordination requirements are considered.
3		Movement orders are issued verbally or in writing. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	MOVEMENT ORDERS SHOULD INCLUDE: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Exceptions to SOP's. 2. Displacement sequences. 3. Time unit must be ready to fire. 4. Strip maps (if required). 5. March tables. 6. Contingency signals. 7. Rough azimuth of lay. 8. Location of new position. 9. MSR priority. 	
CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. A communications control center has been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes communication control procedures.
2		Follows installation and restoration priorities.
3		Maintains circuit status.
4		Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
5		Receives and prepares communications status reports as required.
6		Reports communications problems to SYSCON ASAP.

7	Imposes and lifts radio silence in concert with tactical scenario.	
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONTROL MOVEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit exercises control over subordinate elements. (KI)
3		Unit exercises control over attached elements. (KI)
4		Unit maintains detailed plot on location of all elements. (KI)
5		Subordinate elements operate internal methods of movement control.
6		Elements assigned special missions are controlled. (KI)
7		Operational reports are included in the reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS</p> <p>1. This requirement pertains to the ability of the unit to influence the activities of its components, regardless of the functioning of planned radio networks.</p> <p>2. Methods that apply include:</p> <p>a. Assignment of clearly defined missions.</p> <p>b. Employment of the tactical net.</p> <p>c. Employment of alternate radio nets.</p> <p>d. Wire.</p> <p>e. Messengers.</p> <p>f. Pyrotechnic signals.</p> <p>g. Verbal orders given on the scene.</p> <p>h. Provision of detailed, prior planned instructions.</p> <p>ATTACHED ELEMENTS</p> <p>Unit must have as effective control over attached units as over its subordinate elements. In addition, the unit commander should use the commanders of attached units as a source of recommendations of methods of employment based on capability. Attached units should receive definite missions.</p> <p>OPERATIONS PLOTTING</p> <p>1. Maneuver control depends greatly on the unit being fully aware of the location of all friendly units.</p> <p>2. This includes small elements as well as the major components being controlled and such things as</p> <p>a. Reconnaissance patrols.</p> <p>b. Outposts.</p> <p>c. Security elements.</p> <p>d. Combat patrols.</p> <p>SPECIAL MISSION UNITS</p> <p>The unit must be able to control elements dispatched on any sort of special assignment. This control permits recall if the mission is to be aborted, as</p>	

	well as the provision of support in case of trouble. This aspect of maneuver control may take the form of establishment of one of the various nets for support and control of specially assigned element.
--	---

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Establish and operate radio communications.

Requirement. The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. The section establishes radio communications as required by the plan.

Prerequisites. SC-BC-291.

External Syllabus Support. A communications plan and radio communications equipment and supplies.

Evaluator Checklist.

PREPARE TO CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S) :	The battalion has been tasked to support a MAGTF involved in tactical operations. The initial planning has been completed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Conducts briefings on overall OP/COMM plan.
2		Briefs staff on communications plan.
3		Conducts rehearsal of communications plan.
4		Install communications based on established priorities.
5		Establishes and checks each circuit.
6		Identifies interference problems.
7		Checks for the compatibility of COMSEC equipment.
8		Verifies COMSEC procedures.
9		Evaluates radio traffic operator proficiency.
10		Follows correct message-handling procedures.
11		Demonstrates procedures for handling high priority messages.
12		Conducts pre-operations inspections, inventory, and operations checks.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S) :	The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Conducts map study to determine antenna selection/siting and retransmission requirements.
2		Selects and employs the proper antenna.
3		High gain/directional antennas are installed when the tactical situation permits.
4		Transmitters and receivers are tuned to the exact assigned operating frequencies.
5		Establishes communications.
6		Employs COMSEC equipment and operators employ COMSEC procedures.
7		Transmits on lowest power necessary to maintain communications.
8		Employs radio retransmission as required.
9		Remote radio set control groups are installed to minimize detection of the COC/FDC location.
10		Internal and external nets are entered as required by mission accomplishment. (KI)
11		All safety precautions are taken to prevent radiation or shock, (i.e., lithium batteries are properly used/discarded, antennas are erected and grounded properly).
12		Transmissions are brief and held to a minimum.
13		Uses authorized prowords, procedural phases, and brevity codes.
14		Words and phrases are spoken clearly and distinctly.
15		Uses phonetic alphabet and phonetic numerals when required.
16		Uses collective call sign properly.
17		Weatherproofs equipment.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	

KEY INDICATORS:	Administrative traffic is passed on administrative nets, wire, or courier. Supervisors actively enforce this measure.	
PROCESS MESSAGE TRAFFIC		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion COC/FDC is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Incoming and outgoing messages are processed according to assigned priorities and classification.
2		Messages are properly accounted for and logged.
3		Unit SOP is established, available, and observed to preclude errors or misunderstanding in handling of material.
4		Necessary reference copies of all messages are maintained and receipts for all messages are processed.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ECCM		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. Radio and wire communications have been established. The enemy is employing ECM.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Recognizes ECM's are being used.
2		Only authorized codes are used.
3		Authentication and numerical encryption procedures are used.
4		Radio operators recognize enemy jamming, as opposed to equipment malfunction, and promptly report the activity.
5		Radio operators attempt to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness.
6		Reports are sent by alternate means if available.
7		Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
8		Adheres to emission control (EMCON) conditions.
9		Radios are remotod to the maximum extent practical.
10		Radios and antennas are properly sited and oriented to provide maximum protection from ECM.
11		Terrain masking techniques used where practicable.
12		Expedient directional antennas are employed when feasible.
13		Operator switches to alternate frequency and continues to transmit when directed.
14		Transmitting power is at the minimum required.
15		Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
16		"Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
17		Reports meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) in a timely manner as per formats and procedures designated.
18		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 2502.1.2, 2502.1.3, 2502.1.4, 2502.1.7, 2502.1.8, 2502.1.9, 2502.1.11, 2502.1.14, 2502.2.1, 2502.2.2, 2502.2.4, 2519.1.1, 2519.2.1, 2531.3.24, 2537.1.1, 2537.2.1, 2537.2.2, 2537.3.1, 2537.4.1, 2591.1.2, 2591.1.4, 2591.1.5, 2591.1.6, 2591.1.7, 2591.1.10, 2591.1.16, 2591.2.1, 2591.2.2, 2591.3.1, 2591.3.2, 2591.3.3, 2591.4.1.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 7.50

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Radio Section - 200 Level (SC-RA-292) CRP 12.50

Event. Provide retransmission services.

Requirement. The battalion is employed in a tactical operation. The situation requires retransmission of radio traffic. The section provides this support as required.

Prerequisites. SC-RA-292.

External Syllabus Support. A transmitting unit located at a distance requiring a retransmission site.

Evaluator Checklist.

PROVIDE RETRANSMISSION SERVICE		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in a tactical operation.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Ensures ACEOI contains necessary frequencies for retransmission.
2		Retransmission site is well chosen for effective service and minimum vulnerability.
3		Continuous communications are maintained with battalion net control station.
4		Provides automatic retransmission service as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 2502.1.2, 2531.3.25.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Radio Section - 200 Level (SC-RA-293) CRP 12.50

Event. Employ supplementary communications.

Requirement. A requirement for supplementary communications exists. Supplementary communications materiel is available. The section employs supplementary communications as necessary.

Prerequisites. SC-RA-291.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario requiring supplementary communications.

Evaluator Checklist.

EMPLOY SUPPLEMENTARY COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	A requirement for supplementary communications exists. Supplementary communications materiel is available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit recognizes the need to employ supplementary communications.
2		Unit communicates using two of the five following supplementary communications methods as per the CEOI. - Signal Panels - Pyrotechnics - PLRS - Visual - Sound
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	The evaluator chooses the two methods used.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. Refer to MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Radio Section - 200 Level (SC-RA-294) CRP 12.50

Event. Perform unit mission without radio communications.

Requirement. While performing the mission, during high tempo operations, the unit loses all radio communications for a period of 2-4 hours. The section conducts appropriate actions to restore radio communications and employs other communications means to continue the mission.

Prerequisites. SC-RA-291.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario directing the loss of radio communications.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM UNIT MISSION WITHOUT RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	While performing the mission, during high tempo operations, the unit loses all radio communications for a period of 2-4 hours.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Submit the appropriate report if electronic countermeasures are suspected of causing the problem.
2		Appropriate actions occur to restore radio communications.
3		Reliance on wire and messengers is increased until nets are restored.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. After loss of communications, spare frequencies may be used for restoration purposes. 2. Events are planned, that would normally require the use of radio communications, during the "reduced communications" time in order to observe the unit's performance without radio nets. 3. Additional information is available from FMFM 3 and FMFM 7-12.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. Refer to MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Wire Section - 200 Level (SC-WI-291) CRP 25.00

Event. Employ wire communications.

Requirement. This position will be occupied for a period of time adequate to allow for installation of a complete wire system per the communications plan. Wire will be laid to the batteries.

Prerequisites. SC-RA-291.

External Syllabus Support. A battalion COC established in the field and a communications plan.

Evaluator Checklist.

EMPLOY WIRE COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	This position will be occupied for a period of time adequate to allow for installation of a complete wire system per the communications plan. Wire will be laid to the batteries.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Wire plan meets the operational requirements; identifies subscribers, priority of restoration, etc.
2		Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for the backup system.
3		Prepares traffic diagrams.
4		Prepares and distributes line route maps and overlays.
5		Uses existing commercial/DCS facilities as appropriate.
6		Reliable wire circuits are installed to the switchboard, required units, and designated points as rapidly as the situation and available resources permit.
7		Installs wire system according to established priorities.
8		Wires are tagged and protected from foot or vehicular traffic, buried or strung overhead at road crossings, and staked at switchboard locations. (KI)
9		Switchboard is installed after wire circuits are laid to designated location.
10		Telephones are installed after wire circuits are laid.
11		Telephone and switchboard procedures are followed.
12		Updates wire system as changes occur.
13		Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
14		Organizes effective system control and technical control.
15		Identifies backup system capable of restoring essential services.
16		Performs troubleshooting immediately, as per TM, if wire communications fail.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	LABELING AND PROTECTING WIRE Standard identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed.	

Included ITS. 25 Refer to MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Wire Section - 200 Level (SC-WI-292) CRP 25.00

Event. Recover field wire.

Requirement. The battalion is displacing and the previous wire circuits are no longer required. Section personnel conduct all actions necessary to retrieve, clean and test wire for future use.

Prerequisites. SC-WI-291.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

External Syllabus Support. An installed wire system to another tactical unit.

Evaluator Checklist.

RECOVER FIELD WIRE		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is displacing and the previous wire circuits are no longer required.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Wire lines are recovered as the situation permits.
2		Recovered wire is cleaned and installed on reels.
3		Recovered wire is tested for complete circuit and repaired as required. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Unit SOP should be established and adhered to for testing and repair of recovered wire.	

Included ITS. Refer to MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Prepare for and conduct embarkation.

Requirement. The battalion has been alerted to conduct expeditionary operations. The section conducts actions necessary to prepare the unit for embarkation as required by the identified transportation method. Embarkation is conducted as planned.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. An expeditionary OPLAN or OPORDER, transportation assets and CSS units as required.

Evaluator Checklist.

PREPARE THE STAGING PLAN		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battalion provides security elements as required to protect staged materiel.
2		Communications are established between staging area and base camp.
3		All vehicles and material are staged according to loading priority and assigned stowage. Vehicles are clearly marked as to priority of loading/debarkation.
4		Advance party arrives in staging area in sufficient time to accomplish loading.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT EMBARKATION		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Coordinates embarkation with the Landing Force Commander's plan.
2		Coordinates between the advance party and ship's company, or between the battery and commanding officer of troops. (KI)
3		Executes orderly movement to the POE, embarkation of troops and material.
4		Provides security during embarkation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	COORDINATION INCLUDES: 1. Billeting. 2. Ships guard. 3. Messing. 4. Police. 5. Loading (ships platoon). 6. Communication facilities. 7. Staging area. 8. Laundry. 9. Security.	

Included ITS. 0802.13.1.

Simulation. No.

Reference. LFM 03, Amphibious Embarkation.

Event. Establish battalion logistics train.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. The section establishes mobile combat service support facilities to include ammunition, supply, medical, transportation, maintenance, food service, administration and organic CSS operations element to support organic and attached units. The section develops and maintains a CSS situation map and status board.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 200 X 200 meters with a sufficient road network to

tactically emplace the battalion logistics train and communications equipment.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL 1. Control is accomplished by establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets. 2. Control includes: a. Traffic control over particular routes. b. Dispersal of motor pools. c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use. d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets. e. Enforced dispatch procedures.	
COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of

		various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROVIDE AND MAINTAIN CLASS V AMMO BASIC LOADS AND SUPPLIES		
CONDITION(S):	Small arms ammunition required and maintained at the batteries require replenishment.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Unit SOP established.
2		Clear, concise guidance is provided on basic load.
3		Ammunition, to include explosive mines, grenades, and other associated items are available, accounted for and serviceable.
4		Requisition is forecasted and submitted to maintain the required supply rate (RSR) in sufficient time to prevent unnecessary overloading of resupply sources.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PICKUP AND DELIVER DESIGNATED CLASSES OF SUPPLY		
CONDITION(S):	Supplies require distribution from battalion and other issue points to battery elements, as needed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Supplies are obtained from authorized sources.
2		Proper quantities are received and issued per requisition instructions.
3		Timely schedule of delivery is maintained to minimize the probability of contamination or spoilage.
4		Appropriate security maintained to prevent loss, damage, or theft.
5		Delivery is made to proper battery elements as directed by requisitions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0802.11.1, 0802.11.2, 0802.11.3, 0811.05.10, 0811.05.11.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Bn Logistics - 200 Level (SC-BL-203) CRP 12.50

Event. Conduct tactical march.

Requirement. The logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. The S-4 has issued his movement order. A reconnaissance has been conducted. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The section conducts the appropriate tactical march for the situation.

Prerequisites. SC-BL-202.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH	
CONDITION(S):	Logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Logistics officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities.

	<p>Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open column movement. 2. Close column movement. 3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain March. 	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march. 3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles. 4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule. 	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy detection is unlikely. b. Time is a critical factor. c. Considerable travel distance is involved. d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate. 2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the section is/has: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Need for maximum command and control. b. Limited visibility. c. Moving through built-up or congested areas. 3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy has good target acquisition means. b. Enemy has quick reaction means. c. Section requires stealth in moving to a new position. 	

	<p>4. Terrain March - movement may be by section or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:</p> <p>a. Open roads are congested.</p> <p>b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.</p> <p>c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.</p> <p>d. Soil conditions permit movement.</p> <p>e. Displacement time is not critical.</p> <p>f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position.</p> <p>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</p> <p>1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.</p> <p>2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.</p> <p>3. Consideration of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy.</p> <p>4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.</p> <p>5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.</p> <p>6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.</p>
--	---

Included ITS. 0802.05.07, 0802.05.08.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Bn Logistics - 200 Level (SC-BL-204) CRP 12.50

Event. Defend the logistics train.

Requirement. The logistics train is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability. Logistics train personnel conduct all actions necessary to defend the logistics train and safeguard personnel and equipment. A local security diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. SC-BL-202.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, a training area with authorization to dig fighting positions and aggressor forces (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

MAINTAIN TACTICAL DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines take care to safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew-served, daily.

2		Marines employ their firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Unit leaders do not tolerate random wastage of ammunition.
3		Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
4		Supplies are safeguarded from enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered as litter on the terrain.
5		Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio direction finding (RDF) by unnecessary or repetitious message traffic. Standard prowords and brevity codes are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of rank.
6		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline. (KI)
7		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline. (KI)
8		Marines wear the prescribed uniform, per unit SOP, during all phases of the unit's employment.
9		Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area and inspection of foot and body sores.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	With exceptions evaluators will use the 90 percent rule to determine whether requirements are being met. The exceptions will be communications, noise, and light discipline. These standards will stand literally. If a unit is located by RDF, or observed as a result of noise or light during every phase of the evaluation, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light and noise discipline and communications procedures when no aggressors or EW support is available from the evaluation staff. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline.	
KEY INDICATORS:	NOISE AND LIGHT DISCIPLINE 1. Standards identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed. 2. The number of lights are kept to a minimum and are tactically employed.	
CONDUCT LOCAL SECURITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Briefs and inspects Marines assigned local security missions.
2		Emplaces Marines and weapons in positions which offer good observation, fields of fire, concealment and cover, and which control enemy avenues of approach.
3		Employs local security measures that provide for early warning, continual observation counter-reconnaissance screening, and avoids the element of enemy surprise.
4		Considers active and passive OPSEC measures to prevent surprise and to provide greater security.
5		Positions elements to allow for their mutual support, emphasizing coordinated surveillance, exchange of information, coordinated fires, final protective fires, and fires to cover obstacles and dead space.
6		Plans primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
7		Plans a defense in depth through the use of supplementary positions and the planned use of shifting fires into threatened areas.
8		Employs a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop the movement of enemy forces.
9		Prepares a sketch of the defensive diagram.
10		Terrain features incidental to defense of the position area are depicted.
11		Incorporates the howitzers direct fire capabilities.
12		Coordinates defense with higher headquarters and adjacent units for mutual support, considering the fires of organic weapons, support from infantry mortars, artillery, NGF, and air.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

13		Ensures flexibility is built into the plan through the identification of a reaction force, centralized control over supporting fires, shifting of fires, and supplementary positions.
14		Establishes observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's) and dispatches local security patrols.
15		Maintains dispersion of elements and individuals throughout the operation to avoid excessive casualties.
16		Maximizes use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.
17		Establishes communications between BOC, and/or local security chief and all automatic weapons positions.
18		Ensures critical signals are planned and understood by all Marines.
19		Uses available time effectively in the planning and preparation of defensive positions.
20		Patrols are not dispatched in repetitive or stereotyped patterns.
21		Patrols and other early warning means are used to fill gaps not covered by OP's and LP's.
22		Patrol routes are coordinated with adjacent units and higher headquarters.
23		Security elements report departure and return per established procedures.
24		Conducts a day and night rehearsal of the reaction force.
25		Disseminates combat information acquired by security elements throughout the unit, and as required to higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard. Evaluation should take place during a time when the unit is in a static position.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC CREW SERVED WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions are designated.
2		Weapons are positioned to provide overlapping sectors of fire.
3		Priority of fire is given to the most likely avenues of approach, and PDF's or FPL's are assigned to each weapon.
4		Range cards are prepared and when complete, guns are laid on assigned PDF or FPL.
5		The .50 cal machinegun has proper headspace. (KI)
6		The .50 cal machinegun has proper timing. (KI)
7		Sufficient ammunition is available and personnel are aware of ammunition resupply procedures.
8		Weapons are fired with a heavy volume of flanking and grazing fires at the sustained rate as soon as the enemy is within effective range.
9		Personnel are aware of immediate action in case of a weapon stoppage.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to all weapons and teams/sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	PROPER HEADSPACE Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Ease the recoiling parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting handle and recoiling parts rearward until there is approximate 1/16-inch clearance between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Insert the GO end of the headspace in tight. Insert the NO GO gage. It should not go. If the NO GO gage does go, the headspace is excessive. Proper headspace is present when the GO gage goes and the NO GO gage does not. A yes evaluation is awarded only if headspace is proper. PROPER TIMING Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Insert the NO FIRE gage between	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

	the barrel extension and trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should not release. If the pin releases, the timing is early. Insert the FIRE gage between the barrel extension and the trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should release.	
EMPLOY ANTITANK WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy reconnaissance units embarked in armor vehicles have been detected operating in rear areas. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. Armor engagement positions are manned.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Armor engagement team positions are selected outside the unit area.
2		Primary and alternate positions provide observation over the main avenues of approach, and range to likely engagement points is known.
3		Personnel immediately employ weapons after identification of the armored vehicle and the vehicle comes in range.
4		Personnel are capable of obtaining hits on vulnerable points on the armored vehicle with 2 rounds.
5		Engages armored targets within 300 meters of the AT-4 positions.
6		The gunner is covered by fire from other weapons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONSTRUCT FIELD FORTIFICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team has occupied a new position area and will be in the position for an unspecified period of time.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Individual fighting holes and machinegun positions are prepared as rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
2		Ammunition, equipment, and personnel are protected from blast and small arms fire.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC WEAPONS FOR AIR DEFENSE OF THE POSITION AREA		
CONDITION(S):	Battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations against an enemy who has air parity or limited local air superiority. Battalion S-2/3 has provided battery, section, or team with the air defense weapons control status, current density of enemy air sorties, and enemy air tactics. Enemy sorties consist of flights of two aircraft.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battery, section, or team early warning outposts detect attacking aircraft.
2		At least one machinegun engages first overflight.
3		All small arms and at least 50 percent of Machineguns engage second overflight.
4		Small arms and Machineguns are coordinated in location and firing sequence to force attacking aircraft to fly through a wall of bullets.
5		Section or team chiefs designate proper aiming points for aircraft according to aircraft altitude, axis, and according to type of weapon being fired at aircraft. Section or team responds appropriately.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
UTILIZE COVER, CAMOUFLAGE, AND CONCEALMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is responsible for its own security. The enemy has a night observation capability. The enemy is employing a balanced mix of direct and indirect detection means.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y:N	

	;NE	
1		Internal battery, section, or team operations and activities remain under camouflage to the maximum extent possible. (KI)
2		Personnel, equipment, and emplacements beyond the perimeter are concealed.
3		Camouflage materials and cover are correctly obtained, employed, and replaced. (KI)
4		Individual Marines demonstrate an understanding of the use of covered routes and covered positions.
5		Halted elements do not remain in exposed positions, instead move immediately into the nearest covered area.
6		Equipment, tentage, radios, and vehicle parking areas are sited to take advantage of any cover provided by natural terrain features.
7		Weapons firing positions are established in areas that permit the use of natural cover.
8		All individual Marines and crew-served weapons elements make use of available material to improve cover, including overhead cover.
9		Vehicles are prepared for concealment with appropriate screening material and the use of natural camouflage. (KI)
10		Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate screening material or concealed with natural material.
11		Individual and crew-served weapons firing positions are camouflaged to prevent enemy detection.
12		Organization stresses placement of men and materiel in areas that are concealed from casual detection by enemy air assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Evaluator will use the 90 percent rule.2. This task is applicable throughout the operation.3. Battery, section, or team is permitted to use available vegetation for camouflage and concealment.4. Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	VEHICLES <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Must have any light colored tactical markings dulled or covered.2. Must have reflected surfaces dulled or covered (mirrors and windshield may be removed or covered).	
CONDUCT CRATER ANALYSIS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy shells have impacted. At a minimum, a lensatic compass and map are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Grid location of crater is determined to within 100 meters.
2		Direction of incoming round is determined within 5 minutes after the crater is identified in the area of impact.
3		Direction back to the firing weapon is determined to within 60 mils.
4		Shell fragments are collected and the type of weapons fired is identified.
5		Shelling Report (SHELREP) or an Artillery Counterfire Information Form (ACIF) is completed and transmitted to appropriate agency within 5 minutes after details are collected.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Evaluator will employ either a paper crater with fragments or have a crater dug in the area that is satisfactory for analysis.2. The enemy situation dictates that only hasty survey techniques can be used.3. Personnel of all elements should be evaluated.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM PREVENTIVE MEDICINE SERVICES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in position and facilities have been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	

1		Inspections are conducted on a daily basis of mess, troops facilities, and head areas.
2		Actual and potential health hazards are identified.
3		Immunization is provided.
4		Communicable diseases are identified and treated.
5		Measures of prevention and control of disease are recommended.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROCESS MASS CASUALTIES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. Enemy fire, direct or indirect, has been received in the position area causing casualties.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate first aid knowledge in the treatment of fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
2		Marines lightly wounded apply self-aid.
3		Unit corpsmen conduct triage to maximize number of survivors.
4		Marines requiring evacuation are transported by man carry, litter, vehicle, or helicopter to treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner.
5		Casualty reporting begins immediately after a Marine is wounded, starting at the lowest unit level and terminating at higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator will tag at least 8 casualties per the instructions of the Senior Evaluator. Marines, including officers, who are tagged with incapacitating wounds drop where "hit". Marines tagged as incapacitated do not move under their own power, but rely on other Marines to carry them.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
REPORT INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy has been sighted. Information on enemy activity has become available and requires further action. Captured material has been received and requires further processing.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Information is reported to the unit or battalion as soon as possible after receipt.
2		Spot reports are forwarded using the SALUTE (S-size, A-activity, L-location, U-unit, T-time, E-equipment) format.
3		Procedures for processing captured documents and materials include:
4		Documents and material are processed without delay.
		Turns captured documents and materials into battalion S-2 intact and in the same condition as when received.
		Documents are tagged and evacuated with EPW's.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROCESS EPW'S		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. The unit's local security has captured enemy soldiers.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		EPW's are searched immediately after capture; weapons, documents, and items of potential intelligence value are tagged and evacuated at the same time as EPW's; personnel items, protective clothes and equipment are returned to the EPW's. (KI)
2		Individual Marines handling EPW's segregated them by type and sex - officers, NCO's, unranked, civilian combatants, etc. (KI)
3		EPW's are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
4		EPW's are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
5		Marines handling EPW's ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		and from the hazards of enemy fire.
6		Perishable information obtained from EPW's is reported immediately to higher headquarters.
7		Enemy casualties receive the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is applicable in all cases except those wherein the Senior Evaluator's instructions prohibit the capture of any member of the aggressor force or the introduction of actors into the exercise play.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>SEARCH PROCEDURES</p> <p>1. Search. EPW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of EPW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each EPW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.</p> <p>2. Equipment. Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously observed before may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of such equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.) clothing and rations.</p> <p>3. Documents. A captured document is any piece of recorded information that has been in the hands of the enemy. Only those documents that appear to be of particular intelligence value should be taken from an EPW upon capture. When such documents are taken from an EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of an EPW be taken.</p> <p>4. Personal Effects. Except as indicated above, EPW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money; valuables; protective equipment, such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items or equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record thereof maintained.</p> <p>SEGREGATION</p> <p>The segregation of EPW's by categories first requires that individual EPW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.</p>	

Included ITS. 0802.11.3, Supply not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Bn Supply - 200 Level (SC-BS 201) CRP 15.00

Event. Establish a supply point

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The supply section has been give a Location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to establish a Battalion supply point in order to requisition, receive, account, safeguard, and distribute Supplies to organic and attached units. The section develops and maintains a supply support unit Situation map.

Perquisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters with sufficient road network to Establish mobile resupply.

Evaluator Checklist.

PICKUP AND DELIVER DESIGNATED CLASSES OF SUPPLY		
CONDITION(S):	Supplies require distribution from battalion and other issue points to battery elements, as needed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Supplies are obtained from authorized sources.
2		Proper quantities are received and issued per requisition instructions.
3		Timely schedule of delivery is maintained to minimize the probability of contamination or spoilage.
4		Appropriate security maintained to prevent loss, damage, or theft.
5		Delivery is made to proper battery elements as directed by requisitions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Includes ITS. 0802.11.3, supply not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20,-1 Field artillery Cannon battalion.

Section - Bn Supply - 200 Level (SC-BS-202) CRP 20.00

Event. Provide supply support.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. The logistics train is established. Organic and attached units request resupply. The section conducts actions to verify requests, draw items to satisfy requests, coordinate delivery or pick up, and requisition items to maintain minimum days of supply as directed.

Prerequisites. SC-BS-201.

External Syllabus Support. An external CSS unit to provide supply support.

Evaluator Checklist.

PICKUP AND DELIVER DESIGNATED CLASSES OF SUPPLY		
CONDITION(S):	Supplies require distribution from battalion and other issue points to battery elements, as needed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Supplies are obtained from authorized sources.
2		Proper quantities are received and issued per requisition instructions.
3		Timely schedule of delivery is maintained to minimize the probability of contamination or spoilage.
4		Appropriate security maintained to prevent loss, damage, or theft.

5		Delivery is made to proper battery elements as directed by requisitions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0802.11.1.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Bn Supply - 200 Level (SC-BS-203) CRP 15.00

Event. Retrograde excess supplies.

Requirement. The pace of battalion operations has resulted in excess serviceable supplies being left on the battlefield. The section coordinates actions to recover and reissue supplies as necessary.

Prerequisites. SC-BS-202.

External Syllabus Support. Supplies left in two firing battery positions reported as excess to be recovered by battalion supply, material handling equipment, banding material, pallets and transportation assets.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BS-202.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BS-202.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Establish a tactical motor pool.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The motor transport section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to establish a tactical motor pool in order to safeguard fuel and ammunition vehicles, set up maintenance facilities, control internal traffic flow, manage the dispatch of vehicles and convoys departing the battalion area and coordinate vehicle recovery operations.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 100 X 100 meters with sufficient road network. Use of existing expeditionary facilities such as combat towns or support bases is encouraged and defense of such facilities must be considered.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL 1. Establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets accomplishes control. 2. Control includes: a. Traffic control over particular routes. b. Dispersal of motor pools. c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use. d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets. e. Enforced dispatch procedures.	

Included ITS. 0802.11.1 and refer to OCCFLD 35 ITS Order.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Section - Bn Motor Transport - 200 Level (SC-BM-212) CRP 15.00

Event. Conduct motor transport operations.

Requirement. The motor pool is established. The section conducts actions to control transportation, track motor transport asset availability, prioritize maintenance efforts, recover vehicles, and maintain status on POL usage and availability. The section develops and maintains a bulk fuel, CSS repair facility and MSR situation map.

Prerequisites. SC-BM-211.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 100 X 100 meters with sufficient road network. Use of existing expeditionary facilities such as combat towns or support bases is encouraged and defense of such facilities must be considered.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-211.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-211.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Section - Bn Motor Transport - 200 Level (SC-BM-213) CRP 20.00

Event. Conduct motor transport maintenance.

Requirement. Battalion transportation assets are in need of repair. The section coordinates mobile maintenance contact team actions, conducts repairs within capability, evacuates repairable assets to supporting CSS unit and destroys unrepairable equipment as directed. The section prepares and conducts this destruction as per the operator's TM. The section must simulate this destruction every six months and conduct live demolition training once a year.

Prerequisites. SC-BM-211, SC-BM-212.

External Syllabus Support. Class IX repair parts, inert demolition training aides for simulation, demolition range, combat engineer personnel, and ammunition: M032 5, M131 5, M456 25 ft, M670 10 ft, M766 5.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE ON ORGANIC EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Emergency / routine repair is required. Unit has received repair parts.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs emergency repairs on equipment disabled and beyond the repair capability of the operator/crew.
2		Preventive maintenance services are scheduled for organic equipment and performed on time and accurately.
3		Record maintenance actions and logistical readiness actions on a daily basis or as required.
4		Turns in excess and unserviceable items.
5		Parts are correctly identified, authorized, stored, and secured.
6		Document register, record of demands, and other associated suspense files are properly posted and maintained.
7		Prescribed load list is adjusted correctly based on demand data.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Per the unit SOP and appropriate equipment manuals.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0802.10.1, 0802.11.1. and refer to OCCFLD 35 ITS Order. Also see MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST SGTX.15.8.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Bn Food Service - 200 Level (SC-BF-201) CRP 25.00

Event. Establish a field mess.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The food service section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to establish a field mess in order to receive and store subsistence items, prepare and distribute meals, maintain equipment and dispose of waste.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters, mobile electric power and subsistence items.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL 1. Establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets accomplishes control. 2. Control includes: a. Traffic control over particular routes. b. Dispersal of motor pools. c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use. d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets. e. Enforced dispatch procedures.	

Included ITS. 0802.11.1 and refer to OCCFLD 33 ITS Order.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Section - Bn Food Service - 200 Level (SC-BF-202) CRP 25.00

Event. Provide food service support.

Requirement. The field mess is established. The section conducts actions to prepare meals, coordinate delivery or pick up to prevent spoilage, ensure sanitation is maintained, requisition supplies and maintain equipment.

Prerequisites. SC-BF-201.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters, mobile electric power, subsistence items and units requiring food service support.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BF-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BF-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Bn Medical - 200 Level (SC-BM-201) CRP 10.00

Event. Establish a battalion aid station.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The medical section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to provide triage, advanced trauma life support, evacuation, and routine sick call facilities in support of the battalion. The section develops and maintains a medical-support-unit situation map.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters and an HLZ for aeromedical evacuation.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Bn Medical - 200 Level (SC-BM-202) CRP 10.00

Event. Conduct triage.

Requirement. Casualties are occurring within the battalion. The BAS is established. The section conducts actions to triage patients as they arrive in order to prioritize treatment, identify the extent of injuries, provide basic life support and relieve severe pain. Treatment is provided to EPW's per current regulations.

Prerequisites. SC-BM-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as simulated casualties. As each patient is triaged, one evaluator is required to assess the correct diagnosis by the medical officer or corpsman.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Bn Medical - 200 Level (SC-BM-203) CRP 10.00

Event. Conduct advanced trauma life support.

Requirement. Battalion casualties have been triaged. The medical section conducts actions to maintain airways, manage burns, immobilize fractures, manage shock and control pain to prevent further injury. EPW's are treated per current regulations.

Prerequisites. SC-BM-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as simulated casualties. As each patient is treated, one evaluator is required to assess the correct treatment by the medical officer or corpsman.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Bn Medical - 200 Level (SC-BM-204) CRP 10.00

Event. Coordinate medical evacuation.

Requirement. Battalion casualties require further medical treatment and must be evacuated. The medical section coordinates ground and air medical evacuation with appropriate internal and external organizations to expeditiously remove casualties from the battalion aid station.

Prerequisites. SC-BM-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as simulated casualties. As each patient is selected for evacuation, one evaluator is required to assess the correct decision by the medical officer or corpsman.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Bn Medical - 200 Level (SC-BM-205) CRP 10.00

Event. Provide sick call services.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. Battalion personnel require routine medical support beyond the capability of organic battery corpsmen. The medical section provides routine sick call to assist in the battalion preventive medicine actions.

Prerequisites. SC-BM-201.

External Syllabus Support. None.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM PREVENTIVE MEDICINE SERVICES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in position and facilities have been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Inspections are conducted on a daily basis of mess, troops facilities, and head areas.
2		Actual and potential health hazards are identified.
3		Immunization is provided.
4		Communicable diseases are identified and treated.
5		Measures of prevention and control of disease are recommended.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	

KEY INDICATORS:	None.
-----------------	-------

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-201) CRP 8.00

Event. Prepare personnel for deployment.

Requirement. The battalion is tasked to deploy for expeditionary operations. The section conducts all actions to administratively prepare personnel for deployment including pay, legal assistance, dependent preparation, remain behind personal property security, service record updating and identification card and tag verification.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. An operations plan or order with sufficient personnel administration guidance.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. 0180.5.9.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-202) CRP 7.00

Event. Perform strength accounting.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. Personnel losses and gains have occurred. The section conducts all actions necessary to maintain accurate personnel status of subordinate and attached units including casualty reporting, evacuation, friendly prisoner of war reporting, missing in action reporting, and initial graves registration. A battalion S-1 element must be established in an expeditionary environment.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Units conducting tactical operations.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0180.4.6, 0180.5.4.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-203) CRP 7.00

Event. Process replacements.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Requirement. Combat replacements have arrived at the battalion. The section assigns replacements according to command priorities, conducts all administrative and personnel actions to prepare the individuals for combat to include clothing and equipment inventory, briefings on the unit mission, unit SOP's, current friendly and enemy situations and coordinates transportation to subordinate units.

Prerequisites. SC-AJ-202.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as combat replacements.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. Not identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-204) CRP 7.00

Event. Perform personnel administration.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting operations. Personnel within the command require administrative support. The section performs all administrative actions to process promotions, recommend awards, maintain service records, resolve pay problems, prepare fitness reports, coordinate legal assistance and perform legal administration.

Prerequisites. SC-AJ-202.

External Syllabus Support. None.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. Not identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-205) CRP 7.00

Event. Coordinate and establish a temporary enemy prisoner of war collection point.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. Subordinate units have captured enemy personnel. The section performs actions to collect, secure, process and expeditiously evacuate EPW's to collection points in the rear.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as EPW's, a training area 50 X 50 meters and concertina wire.

Evaluator Checklist.

PROCESS EPW'S		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. The unit's local security has captured enemy soldiers.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		EPW's are searched immediately after capture; weapons, documents, and items of potential intelligence value are tagged and evacuated at the same time as EPW's; personnel items, protective clothes and equipment are returned to the EPW's. (KI)
2		Individual Marines handling EPW's segregated them by type and sex - officers, NCO's, unranked, civilian combatants, etc. (KI)
3		EPW's are required to remain silent and are not permitted to

		converse among themselves.
4		EPW's are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
5		Marines handling EPW's ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from the hazards of enemy fire.
6		Perishable information obtained from EPW's is reported immediately to higher headquarters.
7		Enemy casualties receive the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is applicable in all cases except those wherein the Senior Evaluator's instructions prohibit the capture of any member of the aggressor force or the introduction of actors into the exercise play.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>SEARCH PROCEDURES</p> <p>1. Search. EPW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of EPW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each EPW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.</p> <p>2. Equipment. Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously observed before may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of such equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.) clothing and rations.</p> <p>3. Documents. A captured document is any piece of recorded information that has been in the hands of the enemy. Only those documents that appear to be of particular intelligence value should be taken from an EPW upon capture. When such documents are taken from an EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of an EPW be taken.</p> <p>4. Personal Effects. Except as indicated above, EPW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money; valuables; protective equipment, such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items or equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record thereof maintained.</p> <p>SEGREGATION</p> <p>The segregation of EPW's by categories first requires that individual EPW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.</p>	

Included ITS. See MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-206) CRP 7.00

Event. Perform public affairs.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. The section performs public affairs functions to provide personnel with information of a military and domestic nature, screens news releases for prohibited information, and coordinates the ACTIVITY of news media representatives requesting access to members of the unit.

Prerequisites. SC-AJ-202.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as media representatives.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. None identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP and directives.

Section - Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-AJ-207) CRP 7.00

Event. Provide mail services.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. Mail has been delivered to the battalion and mail has been gathered from subordinate units for dispatch. The section performs actions to safeguard, break down, coordinate delivery to subordinate units and forward outgoing mail as the tactical situation permits.

Prerequisites. SC-AJ-202.

External Syllabus Support. An external unit providing mail services.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. None identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-301) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct reconnaissance and selection of position.

Requirement. Battery has received an order that will require its displacement. Battalion has designated a position area to be occupied. An advance party has been designated. The advanced party conducts all actions necessary for the battery to efficiently occupy the position based upon the tactical situation.

Prerequisites. None

External Syllabus Support. A position approximately 300 X 300 meters, a battalion movement order and a squad size aggressor force (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT RECONNAISSANCE AND SELECTION OF POSITION		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion has been provided the infantry scheme of maneuver and expected direction of attack. Adequate time is permitted to conduct a reconnaissance. Higher headquarters has established position area. An advance party has been designated.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Personnel, equipment, and vehicles are included in the advance party to prepare the new position, mark the route if necessary, and provide for defense of the advance party.
2		Advance party mustered and briefed.
3		Position location is coordinated with infantry unit.
4		Position is appropriate to tactical requirements.
5		Performs map, ground, and/or air reconnaissance (dependent upon time and resources available).
6		Advance party establishes traffic control measures and relays information to facilitate march of main body.
7		Reconnaissance determines route that maximizes trafficability and minimizes chances of detection and attack by enemy.
8		Selected position permits the battalion to accomplish its mission.
9		Sweeps and secures position.
10		Selects the following sites: FDC/COC, communications and antennae, supply, vehicle dispersal area, local security positions, and other sites as required.
11		Pickup point, track plan, entrance and exit points briefed.
12		Organization of the position provides optimum concealment, and establishment of early warning and automatic weapons emplacement.
13		Position improvement continues until the main body arrives.
14		Selects the alternate position.
15		Briefs the occupation of the alternate position and prepares it as time allows.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator should become familiar with unit SOP.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.4.12, 0811.4.16, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.2, 0844.24.1, 0844.24.2, 0844.24.3, 0844.25.1, 0848.26.1, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.32.1, 0848.32.2, 0848.32.3, 0848.33.1, 0848.36.1, 0848.36.2, 0848.36.3.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-FG-301.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-302) CRP 8.00

Event. Conduct a tactical march.

Requirement. Battery has received an order to move to a new position. Battery commander has issued his movement order. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The battery conducts the appropriate tactical march for the situation.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Prerequisites. BT-HQ-301.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S) :	The battalion CP is displacing and the headquarters element must displace. Battery commander has issued his movement order. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches: 1. Open column movement. 2. Close column movement. 3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point.
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground (blocked and unblocked), and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with each organic M2 and MK19 machinegun being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
11		Battalion maintains continuous command and control of subordinate units.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march. 3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles. 4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS 1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when: a. Enemy detection is unlikely. b. Time is a critical factor. c. Considerable travel distance is involved. d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate. 2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the unit is/has: a. Need for maximum command and control.	

<div>b. Limited visibility.</div> <div>c. Moving through built-up or congested areas.</div> <div>3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when:<div><div>a. Enemy has good target acquisition means.</div><div>b. Enemy has quick reaction means.</div><div>c. Battery requires stealth in moving to a new position.</div></div></div> <div>4. Terrain March - movement may be by unit or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:<div><div>a. Open roads are congested.</div><div>b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.</div><div>c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.</div><div>d. Soil conditions permit movement.</div><div>e. Displacement time is not critical.</div><div>f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position.</div></div></div> <div>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</div> <div><div>1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.</div><div>2. If feasible, there are two air guards per vehicle, one scans the sky forward of the vehicle and the other scans the sky rearward.</div><div>3. Machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.</div><div>4. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.</div><div>5. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.</div></div>		
EMPLOY AIR GUARDS		
CONDITION(S):	The unit is displacing. Enemy aircraft have been sighted.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Air guards are aware of signals for warning of air attack.
2		Air guards are assigned specific areas of scan.
3		Two air guards are posted in each vehicle, if feasible.
4		Personnel are capable of visually identifying enemy aircraft.
5		Air guards are rotated at least every 2 hours to maintain alertness.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.1.1, 0811.1.2, 0811.5.8.
0802 ITS Refer to BT-FG-302

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

2-A-196

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-303) CRP 7.00

Event. Occupy a position.

Requirement. Advance party has completed the reconnaissance, selection, and preparation of new position. The main body has arrived at the release point. Battery personnel will conduct all actions necessary to occupy the position while maintaining control of subordinate firing units.

Prerequisites. BT-HQ-301.

External Syllabus Support. A position approximately 300 X 300 meters, a battalion movement order and a squad size aggressor force (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

OCCUPY POSITION		
CONDITION(S):	Advance party has completed the reconnaissance, selection, and preparation of new position. The main body has arrived at the release point.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Crosses release point at specified time.
2		Maintains security during occupation.
3		Follows track plan during occupation.
4		Vehicle guides, order of march, and routes into the new position facilitate rapid occupation.
5		Positions vehicle(s) to allow for rapid displacement.
6		Battalion maintains continuous command and control of subordinate units. (KI)
7		Positive control of firing units is maintained throughout the passing of control between the main and forward command posts.
8		Designated sites are occupied.
9		Positions are improved as mission and time permit.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Either the main or forward headquarters echelon must maintain positive control.	

Included ITS. 0844.23.1, 0844.23.2, 0844.24.1, 0844.24.2, 0844.24.3, 0844.25.1, 0848.26.1, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.32.1, 0848.32.2, 0848.32.3, 0848.33.1, 0848.36.1, 0848.36.2, 0848.36.3.
0802 ITS: BT-FG-303

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-304) CRP 7.00

Event. Defend the battery.

Requirement. The battery is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability. Battery personnel conduct all actions necessary to defend the battery and safeguard personnel and equipment. A local security diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. BT-HQ-303.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, a training area with authorization to dig fighting positions and aggressor forces (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

MAINTAIN TACTICAL DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines take care to safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew-served, daily.

2		Marines employ their firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Unit leaders do not tolerate random wastage of ammunition.
3		Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
4		Supplies are safeguarded from enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered as litter on the terrain.
5		Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio direction finding (RDF) by unnecessary or repetitious message traffic. Standard prowords and brevity codes are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of rank.
6		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline. (KI)
7		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline. (KI)
8		Marines wear the prescribed uniform, per unit SOP, during all phases of the unit's employment.
9		Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area and inspection of foot and body sores.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	With exceptions evaluators will use the 90 percent rule to determine whether requirements are being met. The exceptions will be communications, noise, and light discipline. These standards will stand literally. If a unit is located by RDF, or observed as a result of noise or light during every phase of the evaluation, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light and noise discipline and communications procedures when no aggressors or EW support is available from the evaluation staff. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p align="center">NOISE AND LIGHT DISCIPLINE</p> <p>1. Standards identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed.</p> <p>2. The number of lights are kept to a minimum and are tactically employed.</p>	
CONDUCT LOCAL SECURITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Briefs and inspects Marines assigned local security missions.
2		Emplaces Marines and weapons in positions which offer good observation, fields of fire, concealment and cover, and which control enemy avenues of approach.
3		Employs local security measures that provide for early warning, continual observation counter-reconnaissance screening, and avoids the element of enemy surprise.
4		Considers active and passive OPSEC measures to prevent surprise and to provide greater security.
5		Positions elements to allow for their mutual support, emphasizing coordinated surveillance, exchange of information, coordinated fires, final protective fires, and fires to cover obstacles and dead space.
6		Plans primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
7		Plans a defense in depth through the use of supplementary positions and the planned use of shifting fires into threatened areas.
8		Employs a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop the movement of enemy forces.
9		Prepares a sketch of the defensive diagram.
10		Terrain features incidental to defense of the position area are depicted.
11		Incorporates the howitzers direct fire capabilities.
12		Coordinates defense with higher headquarters and adjacent units for

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		mutual support, considering the fires of organic weapons, support from infantry mortars, artillery, NGF, and air.
13		Ensures flexibility is built into the plan through the identification of a reaction force, centralized control over supporting fires, shifting of fires, and supplementary positions.
14		Establishes observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's) and dispatches local security patrols.
15		Maintains dispersion of elements and individuals throughout the operation to avoid excessive casualties.
16		Maximizes use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.
17		Establishes communications between BOC, and/or local security chief and all automatic weapons positions.
18		Ensures critical signals are planned and understood by all Marines.
19		Uses available time effectively in the planning and preparation of defensive positions.
20		Patrols are not dispatched in repetitive or stereotyped patterns.
21		Patrols and other early warning means are used to fill gaps not covered by OP's and LP's.
22		Patrol routes are coordinated with adjacent units and higher headquarters.
23		Security elements report departure and return per established procedures.
24		Conducts a day and night rehearsal of the reaction force.
25		Disseminates combat information acquired by security elements throughout the unit, and as required to higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard. Evaluation should take place during a time when the unit is in a static position.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC CREW SERVED WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions are designated.
2		Weapons are positioned to provide overlapping sectors of fire.
3		Priority of fire is given to the most likely avenues of approach, and PDF's or FPL's are assigned to each weapon.
4		Range cards are prepared and when complete, guns are laid on assigned PDF or FPL.
5		The .50 cal machinegun has proper headspace. (KI)
6		The .50 cal machinegun has proper timing. (KI)
7		Sufficient ammunition is available and personnel are aware of ammunition resupply procedures.
8		Weapons are fired with a heavy volume of flanking and grazing fires at the sustained rate as soon as the enemy is within effective range.
9		Personnel are aware of immediate action in case of a weapon stoppage.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to all weapons and teams/sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	PROPER HEADSPACE Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Ease the recoiling parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting handle and recoiling parts rearward until there is approximate 1/16-inch clearance between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Insert the GO end of the headspace in tight. Insert the NO GO gage. It should not go. If the NO GO gage does go, the headspace is excessive. Proper headspace is present when the GO gage goes and the NO GO gauge does not. A yes evaluation is awarded only if headspace is proper. PROPER TIMING	

	Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Insert the NO FIRE gage between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should not release. If the pin releases, the timing is early. Insert the FIRE gage between the barrel extension and the trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should release.	
EMPLOY ANTITANK WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy reconnaissance units embarked in armor vehicles have been detected operating in rear areas. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. Armor engagement positions are manned.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Armor engagement team positions are selected outside the unit area.
2		Primary and alternate positions provide observation over the main avenues of approach, and range to likely engagement points is known.
3		Personnel immediately employ weapons after identification of the armored vehicle and the vehicle comes in range.
4		Personnel are capable of obtaining hits on vulnerable points on the armored vehicle with 2 rounds.
5		Engages armored targets within 300 meters of the AT-4 positions.
6		The gunner is covered by fire from other weapons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONSTRUCT FIELD FORTIFICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team has occupied a new position area and will be in the position for an unspecified period of time.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Individual fighting holes and machinegun positions are prepared as rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
2		Ammunition, equipment, and personnel are protected from blast and small arms fire.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC WEAPONS FOR AIR DEFENSE OF THE POSITION AREA		
CONDITION(S):	Battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations against an enemy who has air parity or limited local air superiority. Battalion S-2/3 has provided battery, section, or team with the air defense weapons control status, current density of enemy air sorties, and enemy air tactics. Enemy sorties consist of flights of two aircraft.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battery, section, or team early warning outposts detect attacking aircraft.
2		At least one machinegun engages first overflight.
3		All small arms and at least 50 percent of Machineguns engage second overflight.
4		Small arms and Machineguns are coordinated in location and firing sequence to force attacking aircraft to fly through a wall of bullets.
5		Section or team chiefs designate proper aiming points for aircraft according to aircraft altitude, axis, and according to type of weapon being fired at aircraft. Section or team responds appropriately.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
UTILIZE COVER, CAMOUFLAGE, AND CONCEALMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is responsible for its own security. The enemy	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

	has a night observation capability. The enemy is employing a balanced mix of direct and indirect detection means.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Internal battery, section, or team operations and activities remain under camouflage to the maximum extent possible. (KI)
2		Personnel, equipment, and emplacements beyond the perimeter are concealed.
3		Camouflage materials and cover are correctly obtained, employed, and replaced. (KI)
4		Individual Marines demonstrate an understanding of the use of covered routes and covered positions.
5		Halted elements do not remain in exposed positions, instead move immediately into the nearest covered area.
6		Equipment, tentage, radios, and vehicle parking areas are sited to take advantage of any cover provided by natural terrain features.
7		Weapons firing positions are established in areas that permit the use of natural cover.
8		All individual Marines and crew-served weapons elements make use of available material to improve cover, including overhead cover.
9		Vehicles are prepared for concealment with appropriate screening material and the use of natural camouflage. (KI)
10		Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate screening material or concealed with natural material.
11		Individual and crew-served weapons firing positions are camouflaged to prevent enemy detection.
12		Organization stresses placement of men and materiel in areas that are concealed from casual detection by enemy air assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Evaluator will use the 90 percent rule. 2. This task is applicable throughout the operation. 3. Battery, section, or team is permitted to use available vegetation for camouflage and concealment. 4. Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	VEHICLES 1. Must have any light colored tactical markings dulled or covered. 2. Must have reflected surfaces dulled or covered (mirrors and windshield may be removed or covered).	
CONDUCT CRATER ANALYSIS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy shells have impacted. At a minimum, a lensatic compass and map are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Grid location of crater is determined to within 100 meters.
2		Direction of incoming round is determined within 5 minutes after the crater is identified in the area of impact.
3		Direction back to the firing weapon is determined to within 60 mils.
4		Shell fragments are collected and the type of weapons fired is identified.
5		Shelling Report (SHELREP) or an Artillery Counterfire Information Form (ACIF) is completed and transmitted to appropriate agency within 5 minutes after details are collected.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Evaluator will employ either a paper crater with fragments or have a crater dug in the area that is satisfactory for analysis. 2. The enemy situation dictates that only hasty survey techniques can be used. 3. Personnel of all elements should be evaluated.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM PREVENTIVE MEDICINE SERVICES		

CONDITION(S):	The battery is in position and facilities have been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Inspections are conducted on a daily basis of mess, troops facilities, and head areas.
2		Actual and potential health hazards are identified.
3		Immunization is provided.
4		Communicable diseases are identified and treated.
5		Measures of prevention and control of disease are recommended.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROCESS MASS CASUALTIES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. Enemy fire, direct or indirect, has been received in the position area causing casualties.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate first aid knowledge in the treatment of fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
2		Marines lightly wounded apply self-aid.
3		Unit corpsmen conduct triage to maximize number of survivors.
4		Marines requiring evacuation are transported by man carry, litter, vehicle, or helicopter to treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner.
5		Casualty reporting begins immediately after a Marine is wounded, starting at the lowest unit level and terminating at higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator will tag at least 8 casualties per the instructions of the Senior Evaluator. Marines, including officers, who are tagged with incapacitating wounds drop where "hit". Marines tagged as incapacitated do not move under their own power, but rely on other Marines to carry them.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
REPORT INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy has been sighted. Information on enemy activity has become available and requires further action. Captured material has been received and requires further processing.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Information is reported to the unit or battalion as soon as possible after receipt.
2		Spot reports are forwarded using the SALUTE (S-size, A-activity, L-location, U-unit, T-time, E-equipment) format.
		Procedures for processing captured documents and materials include:
3		Documents and material are processed without delay.
4		Turns captured documents and materials into battalion S-2 intact and in the same condition as when received.
5		Documents are tagged and evacuated with EPW's.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROCESS EPW'S		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. The unit's local security has captured enemy soldiers.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		EPW's are searched immediately after capture; weapons, documents, and items of potential intelligence value are tagged and evacuated at the same time as EPW's; personnel items, protective clothes and equipment are returned to the EPW's. (KI)
2		Individual Marines handling EPW's segregated them by type and sex - officers, NCO's, unranked, civilian combatants, etc. (KI)
3		EPW's are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
4		EPW's are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		benefit.
5		Marines handling EPW's ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from the hazards of enemy fire.
6		Perishable information obtained from EPW's is reported immediately to higher headquarters.
7		Enemy casualties receive the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is applicable in all cases except those wherein the Senior Evaluator's instructions prohibit the capture of any member of the aggressor force or the introduction of actors into the exercise play.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>SEARCH PROCEDURES</p> <p>1. Search. EPW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of EPW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each EPW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.</p> <p>2. Equipment. Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously observed before may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of such equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.) clothing and rations.</p> <p>3. Documents. A captured document is any piece of recorded information that has been in the hands of the enemy. Only those documents that appear to be of particular intelligence value should be taken from an EPW upon capture. When such documents are taken from an EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of an EPW be taken.</p> <p>4. Personal Effects. Except as indicated above, EPW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money; valuables; protective equipment, such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items or equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record thereof maintained.</p> <p>SEGREGATION</p> <p>The segregation of EPW's by categories first requires that individual EPW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.</p>	

Included ITS. 0811.1.1, 0811.2.13, 0811.4.1, 0811.4.17, 0811.5.6, 0811.5.21, MBST.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-FG-305

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-305) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct a displacement.

Requirement. Battery is in position providing command and control facilities for the battalion. The tactical situation requires the battery to conduct a displacement. The battery conducts all actions necessary to displace by the most appropriate technique.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Prerequisites. BT-HQ-303.

External Syllabus Support. A battalion movement order, helicopter support as required, two positions and aggressor forces (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT A HASTY DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Battery is in position providing support to the battalion. The tactical situation requires the battery to conduct a displacement expeditiously. Little time is available to organize and conduct the displacement. This situation may arise as a result of an imminent enemy attack or because of a change in the friendly situation. The battalion has provided a new position area and route of march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Minimum essential personnel, equipment, and vehicles are employed to reconnoiter the route, organize and prepare the position, and provide defense for the advance party.
2		Advance party assembles and departs for new position after battalion orders displacement. Daylight Darkness 7 minutes 10 minutes
3		The main body departs for the new position within specified time after battalion orders displacement. Daylight Darkness 20 minutes 30 minutes
4		Reconnaissance determines the route that maximizes trafficability and minimizes chances of detection and attack by enemy.
5		Advance party establishes entrance routes and locations which minimizes concealment problems and facilitates rapid occupation.
6		Elements close into the new position within the time frame specified by battalion.
7		Control of battalion passes to the battalion's forward headquarters echelon prior to displacing.
8		Maintains communications with higher headquarters.
9		Selected position permits the battalion to accomplish its mission.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. Time for advance party: a. Time Starts: When the battery receives the order to displace. b. Time Stops: When last element of advance party begins movement from position. 3. Time for entire battery: a. Time Starts: When battery receives the order to displace. b. Time Stops: When last mission essential vehicle begins movement from position. 4. Definition of "mission essential" for purposes of this evaluation - the vehicles and equipment necessary that provide the assets required for the unit to perform it's mission.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.5.7, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.2, 0844.24.1, 0844.24.2, 0844.24.3, 0844.25.1, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.32.1, 0848.32.2, 0848.32.3, 0848.33.1, 0848.36.1, 0848.36.2, 0848.36.3. 0802 ITS Refer to BT-FG-306

Simulation. No.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-306) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct operations in an NBC environment.

Requirement. Threat forces have employed NBC, air, and ground attack in the area aimed at destroying /disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the unit. Battery personnel conduct those actions necessary to fight and survive in an NBC environment.

Prerequisites. BT-HQ-301, BT-HQ-302, BT-HQ-303, BT-HQ-304, BT-HQ-305.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, NBCD T/E equipment and NBCD training devices.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BT-FG-308.

Included ITS. Refer to BT-FG-308.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters - 300 Level (BT-HQ-307) CRP 7.00

Event. Sustain the battery.

Requirement. The battery is conducting tactical operations. Battery personnel will conduct all actions necessary to maintain equipment, conduct resupply, and perform survivability tasks.

Prerequisites. BT-HQ-303.

External Syllabus Support. An external CSS unit and a tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BT-FG-309.

Included ITS. Refer to BT-FG-309.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Event. Conduct expeditionary operations.

Requirement. The battalion has been alerted to support a maneuver force. The supported force's OORDER or OPLAN has been received. The battalion commander has issued his guidance that permits planning to proceed per doctrine. Intelligence information, transportation means and methods of supply have been determined. The battalion staff conducts all actions necessary to alert subordinate units, plan, deploy, and execute an expeditionary operation.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets and a training area suitable to employ the artillery battalion as required by the tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS PLANNING		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion has been tasked to support a landing force for an amphibious operation. Battalion is provided sufficient guidance that permits planning to proceed per doctrine.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Submits information requirements (enemy indirect fire capabilities, landing beach trafficability, road network, etc.).
2		Provides Artillery estimate of supportability.
3		Provides Artillery Fire Plan.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Planning considerations and documents are in accordance with doctrine (FMFM 3-1, FMFM 6-9).	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PREPARE THE ARTILLERY FIRE PLAN		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault. Battalion is provided the fire support plan and sufficient guidance that permits planning to proceed per doctrine and development of an artillery fire plan.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Landing sequence for artillery elements is determined.
2		Recommended targets are prepared for inclusion in the ATF target list and are submitted with recommended attack priority.
3		Priority of fires to maneuver elements is established.
4		Artillery fire and fire support plan reflects considerations of enemy capabilities and the effect of terrain restrictions.
5		In coordination with the supported infantry restrictions on targets, ammunition conservation measures and instructions on troop safety are published.
6		Overlays and fire support documents are prepared as per doctrinal publications and/or SOP's.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PREPARE THE STAGING PLAN		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battalion provides security elements as required to protect staged materiel.
2		Communications are established between staging area and base camp.
3		All vehicles and material are staged according to loading priority and assigned stowage. Vehicles are clearly marked as to priority of loading/debarkation.
4		Advance party arrives in staging area in sufficient time to accomplish loading.
EVALUATOR	None.	

INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT EMBARKATION		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Coordinates embarkation with the Landing Force Commander's plan.
2		Coordinates between the advance party and ship's company, or between the battery and commanding officer of troops. (KI)
3		Executes orderly movement to the POE, embarkation of troops and material.
4		Provides security during embarkation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	COORDINATION INCLUDES: 1. Billeting. 2. Ships guard. 3. Messing. 4. Police. 5. Loading (ships platoon). 6. Communication facilities. 7. Staging area. 8. Laundry. 9. Security.	
PARTICIPATE IN A REHEARSAL		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force that is conducting a rehearsal. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battalion rehearses as much of the operation plan as time and assets permit. Timing is verified for coordinating landing plan details.
2		Communications are exercised, problems identified, and solutions developed.
3		Battalion holds critique after rehearsal.
4		All equipment subjected to salt water is inspected and cleaned.
5		Recommended changes to the landing plan are submitted as necessary.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PARTICIPATE IN DEBARKATION/ASSAULT		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion has been designated as part of the landing force. Shipping is available to conduct an amphibious assault.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battalion prepares for debarkation during final approach to transport area by rechecking muster of all personnel and final weapons/equipment checks.
2		Vehicle drivers occupy assigned vehicles as per ship's procedures.
3		Marines board vehicles and assigned boats with minimum of verbal orders.
4		Vehicles proceed per landing plan.
5		Radio silence maintained until notified otherwise.
6		FO's and NGF spot teams land with infantry in assault waves.
7		Battery commander's advance party lands prior to the firing batteries and locates firing positions.
EVALUATOR	None.	

INSTRUCTIONS:	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.

Includes ITS. 0840.12, 0840.1.3, 0840.1.4, 0840.1.5, 0840.1.8, 0840.19, 0845.1.1.

This event requires the performance of most of the 0802 ITS's contained herein and are too numerous to list.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. ATP 38, amphibious Operations.

Battalion - Headquarters - 400 Level (BN-HQ-402) CRP 8.00

Event. Provide artillery support

Requirement. An artillery tactical mission is assigned. A fire support plan is provided. An Artillery fire plan to support the fire support plan is required. The battalion will perform all Actions necessary to provide artillery support to include publishing artillery plans, plan future operations, monitor targeting, develop targets, provide counterfires, coordinate artillery fires, coordinate and conduct survey/meteorological operations.

Prerequisites. BT-FG-304, BT-HQ-303.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, commander's guidance, and a maneuver element Fire support plan.

Evaluator Checklist.

PLAN AND COORDINATE UNIT DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is required to displace while conducting tactical operations. Battery and battalion position areas have been selected.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Movement is planned which supports the scheme of maneuver of the supported unit and is coordinated through the supported unit.
2		Security requirements, time available to move, other traffic restrictions, enemy activity, and coordination requirements are considered.
		Movement orders are issued verbally or in writing. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	MOVEMENT ORDERS SHOULD INCLUDE: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Exceptions to SOP's. 2. Displacement sequences. 3. Time unit must be ready to fire. 4. Strip maps (if required). 5. March tables. 6. Contingency signals. 7. Rough azimuth of lay. 8. Location of new position. 9. MSR priority. 	
DEVELOP AND PROCESS TARGET INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received. A radar team with a target production capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	

1		Target Processing Center is set up and performs its mission.
2		Target intelligence is developed rapidly enough to exploit targets.
3		All personnel actively seek information on enemy order of battle.
4		Coordination/liaison is established with the supported unit for processing and dissemination of intelligence.
5		Fire capability overlay is developed and maintained.
6		Receives and correlates the production of targets from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - CBR section - FO's - Crater analysis - Subordinate units
7		Interprets data to select targets and target indicators on the basis of the most current target selection standards and available sources.
8		Coordinates and disseminates data as quickly as possible to the appropriate element per established counterfire guidance from attack guidance matrix.
9		Establishes and maintains a counterfire reference grid (CRG) on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Target production map - FDC situation maps - Order of Battle map - Weapons-locating radar section maps
10		Prepares and maintains a target production map and overlays.
11		Prepares and maintains the target card file.
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP THE PLAN FOR EMPLOYING FIELD ARTILLERY		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's guidance has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Field artillery plan is expeditiously developed based on each phase/major mission of the supported maneuver unit.
2		The plan contains detailed guidance. (KI)
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	DETAILED GUIDANCE SHOULD INCLUDE: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Radar employment (when available). 2. Plan for survey support. 3. Plan for Meteorological support. 4. Deception techniques to be employed. 5. Registration restrictions. 6. Enemy target acquisition capabilities. 7. Attack guidance. 8. Air defense suppression. 9. Suppression instructions. 10. Coordination for engineer support to harden positions. 11. Survivability instructions. 12. Supported unit commander's guidance on: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Priority targets. b. Damage criteria. c. Priority of fires. 	

	d. Special fires.	
	e. Firing restrictions.	
	f. Mission precedence.	
ASSUME TACTICAL CONTROL OF HIGHER HEADQUARTERS		
CONDITION(S):	Higher headquarters is unable to control subordinate units, or has become a combat casualty and battalion is required to assume control. The regimental SOP is followed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Acknowledges control has been passed.
2		Establishes required communications. (KI)
3		Maintains an accurate plot of friendly units, and other supporting arms.
4		Demonstrates control of regiment by massing firing elements, and issuing movement orders to battalions as the situation dictates.
5		Coordinates with the supported units' tactical command elements to stay abreast of the tactical situation and ensure continued integrated artillery support.
6		Coordinates logistical support.
7		Coordinates radar/target acquisition support.
8		Coordinates survey support.
9		Coordinates MET support.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Minimum number of nets must be up and operational per unit SOP.	
PROVIDE DIRECT SUPPORT FIRES		
CONDITION(S):	A direct support mission is assigned. A fire support plan is provided. An artillery fire plan to support the fire support plan is required.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Answers call for fire in priority from supported unit, own observers (to include radar), and artillery higher headquarters.
2		Has as its zone of fire the zone of action of supported unit.
3		Furnishes FO and FSCC personnel and provides temporary replacements for casualty losses as required.
4		Establishes communications with FO's and supported maneuver unit headquarters. (KI)
5		Is positioned by direct support artillery unit commander or as ordered by artillery higher headquarters. (KI)
6		Develops own artillery fire plan from the fire support plan.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	COMMUNICATIONS 1. Directs maximum use of wire communication. 2. Directs use of retransmission sites if necessary. POSITIONING 1. Coordinates position area with supported unit or higher headquarters. 2. Determines method of displacement and issues necessary orders for displacement. 3. Directs continuous route and position reconnaissance. 4. Keeps maximum number of firing units in position and ready to fire. 5. Coordinates logistical support with the S-4.	
PROVIDE REINFORCING FIRES		
CONDITION(S):	A reinforcing mission is assigned. A fire support plan is provided. An artillery fire plan to support the fire support plan is required.	

STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Answers calls for fire in priority from reinforced artillery unit, own observers (to include radar), and artillery higher headquarters.
2		Has as its zone of fire the zone of fire of the reinforced artillery unit.
3		Furnishes liaison officer to reinforced artillery unit headquarters.
4		Establishes communications with reinforced artillery unit headquarters. (KI)
5		Is positioned by reinforced artillery unit or as ordered by the artillery higher headquarters. (KI)
6		Has its fires planned by reinforced artillery unit headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p style="text-align: center;">COMMUNICATIONS</p> <p>1. Directs maximum use of wire communication.</p> <p>2. Directs use of retransmission sites if necessary.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">POSITIONING</p> <p>1. Coordinates position area with reinforced artillery unit and higher headquarters.</p> <p>2. Determines method of displacement and issues necessary orders for displacement.</p> <p>3. Directs continuous route and position reconnaissance.</p> <p>4. Coordinates logistical support with the S-4.</p>	
PROVIDE GENERAL SUPPORT REINFORCING FIRES		
CONDITION(S):	A general support reinforcing mission is assigned. A fire support plan is provided. An artillery fire plan to support the fire support plan is required.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Answers call for fire in priority from artillery higher headquarters, reinforced artillery unit, and own FO's (to include radar).
2		Has as its zone of fire the zone of action of supported unit to include zone of fire of reinforced artillery unit.
3		Furnishes liaison officer to reinforced artillery unit headquarters.
4		Establishes communications with reinforced artillery unit headquarters. (KI)
5		Is positioned by artillery higher headquarters or reinforced artillery unit if approved by artillery higher headquarters. (KI)
6		Has its fires planned by artillery higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p style="text-align: center;">COMMUNICATIONS</p> <p>1. Directs maximum use of wire communication.</p> <p>2. Directs use of retransmission sites if necessary.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">POSITIONING</p> <p>1. Coordinates position area with higher artillery headquarters.</p> <p>2. Determines method of displacement and issues necessary orders for displacement.</p> <p>3. Directs continuous route and position reconnaissance.</p> <p>4. Keeps maximum number of firing units in position and ready to fire.</p> <p>5. Coordinates logistical support with the S-4.</p>	

PROVIDE GENERAL SUPPORT FIRES		
CONDITION(S):	A general support mission is assigned. A fire support plan is provided. An artillery fire plan to support the fire support plan is required.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Answers call for fire in priority from artillery higher headquarters, and own observers (to include radar). (KI)
2		Has as its zone of fire the zone of action of supported unit.
3		Is positioned by artillery higher headquarters. (KI)
4		Has its fires planned by artillery higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	COMMUNICATIONS 1. Directs maximum use of wire communication. 2. Directs use of retransmission sites if necessary. POSITIONING 1. Coordinates position area and movement with higher artillery headquarters. 2. Determines method of displacement and issues necessary orders for displacement. 3. Directs continuous route and position reconnaissance. 4. Keeps maximum number of firing units in position and ready to fire. 5. Coordinates logistical support with the S-4.	
PROCESS PLANNED FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's scheme of maneuver, concept of operations, and the fire support plan has been provided.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Processes planned artillery support as rapidly as the situation requires to ensure delivery of fires when required. (KI)
2		Targets are given identification numbers.
3		Planned targets are assigned to units.
4		Determines a method of attack that obtains the desired results at the designated time.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Follows attack guidance matrix.	
PROVIDE TACTICAL SITUATION, INTELLIGENCE PLANS, AND LOCATION OF SUPPORTED UNIT TO THE BATTERIES		
CONDITION(S):	The tactical situation, plans, and disposition of the supported unit are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Provides planned scheme of maneuver and requirements for fire support.
2		Provides current situation.
3		Provides location of friendly units activities.
4		Passes all appropriate intelligence.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	As available, the above listed information maintained by the battalion is provided to the subordinate batteries.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PLAN AND SCHEDULE FIRES		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion has received a complete list of targets containing priority targets, or a target list worksheet from a maneuver unit FSC, or higher headquarters/reinforced unit has passed complete list of targets to battalion FDC from maneuver unit FSC. The FDO has determined that at least one target can only be engaged by high angle fire.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	

1		Prepares schedule of fires based on the maneuver unit commander's guidance. (KI)
2		After scheduling data is completed, begins transmitting to appropriate unit(s)
3		Schedule of fires are transmitted in a timely manner.
4		Priority targets are specified.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	SCHEDULING 1. Preparations and counter preparations are phased per FMFM 6-18. 2. Gaps and shift times between targets in schedules are per FMFM 6-18. 3. Preparations and counter preparations begin and end with all firing units used. 4. Battalion completes scheduling worksheet based on target list worksheet provided by supported unit FSCC.	
COORDINATE A BATTALION TOT		
CONDITION(S):	Battery requests reinforcing fires from battalion FDC, or a fire order or fire for effect call for fire requiring a battalion mass has been received. The mission requires a battalion mass. Target is accurately located.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance and munitions effects tables.
3		Fire order is announced within 45 seconds.
4		FDO chooses a supportable TOT.
5		Fire order is transmitted.
6		Ensures all units receive the TOT.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the call for fire, request for reinforcing fires, or a fire order. 2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
COORDINATE BATTALION MASS, ONE BATTERY ADJUSTING WITH BATTALION IN EFFECT		
CONDITION(S):	Battery requests reinforcing fires from battalion FDC, or a fire order or call for fire requiring a battalion mass has been received. The mission requires a battalion mass. Target is not accurately located.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance and munitions effects tables.
3		Fire order is announced within 45 seconds.
4		Fire order is transmitted to adjusting battery.
5		Warning orders are issued to FFE units.
6		Remaining elements of the fire order are transmitted to the FFE units after replot grid has been determined. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the call for fire, request for reinforcing fires, or a fire order. 2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Replot data is determined by the adjusting battery and sent to non-adjusting batteries.	
COORDINATE A SMOKE MISSION		
CONDITION(S):	FO has requested an adjust fire mission with smoke in effect requiring more than one unit to fire, or a fire order has been received. The FO has completed his adjustment and requested FFE rounds.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Determines aim points and units to fire.

3		Fire order is announced within 1 minute 45 seconds.
4		Fire order is transmitted.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the call for fire, or a fire order.	
	2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
COORDINATE AN ADJUST FIRE, BATTALION MASS MISSION UNDER ILLUMINATION		
CONDITION(S):	FO hears enemy movement, requests an illumination mission, observes a target, and then requests adjust fire with shell HE. Target requires a battalion mass with range or lateral spread. Battalion FDO decides to fire battalion in effect, or a fire order requiring a battalion mass has been received. Ammunition status requires coordinated rather than continuous illumination.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance and munitions effects tables. (KI)
3		Fire order is announced within 45 seconds.
4		Fire order is transmitted to adjusting battery.
5		Warning orders are issued to FFE units.
6		Remaining elements of the fire order are transmitted to the FFE units after replot grid has been determined. (KI)
7		Battalion receives ILLUMINATION MARK.
8		All guns not firing illumination rounds, fire in effect.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the call for fire, or a fire order.	
	2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Replot data is determined by the adjusting battery and sent to non-adjusting batteries.	
COORDINATE A BATTALION FFE		
CONDITION(S):	Battery requests reinforcing fires from battalion FDC, or a fire order or fire for effect call for fire requiring a battalion mass has been received. The mission requires a battalion mass. Target is accurately located and is approximately 400 meters in diameter.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance and munitions effects tables.
3		Aim points determined. (KI)
4		Fire order is announced within 1 minute 45 seconds.
5		Fire order is transmitted. (KI)
6		Control volley fire. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the call for fire, or a fire order.	
	2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Order of preference in FFE is: TOT, AMC, and WHEN READY.	
COORDINATE DELIVERY OF A FASCAM MINEFIELD		
CONDITION(S):	FDC has received an order to employ a FASCAM minefield from higher headquarters. The size of the minefield 400x400 meters. Both Remote Anti-Armor Mines (RAAMS) and Area Denial Artillery Munitions (ADAM) are requested, medium density. An FO is not available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Field Artillery Delivered Minefield Planning Sheet (DA Form 5032-R) is completed.
3		Aim points determined.
4		Rounds per aim point are determined.
5		Fire order is announced within 4 minutes.
6		Fire order is transmitted.
7		Minefield position is reported to higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR	1. The task may be evaluated as a planned or a priority target.	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

INSTRUCTIONS:	2. Time Starts: FDC receives order to employ FASCAM minefield.	
	3. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
COORDINATE A COPPERHEAD MISSION		
CONDITION(S):	A copperhead mission is required.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Determines firing unit most capable of conducting mission. (KI)
3		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance.
4		Fire order is announced within 45 seconds.
5		Fire order is transmitted. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the fire order.	
	2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Firing battery is placed in control of the mission.	
COORDINATE A BATTALION FFE MISSION ON AN IRREGULARLY SHAPED TARGET		
CONDITION(S):	FO identifies large enemy buildup and has requested battalion FFE. Target size requires a different aiming point for each battery.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance and munitions effects tables. (KI)
3		Aim points determined. (KI)
4		Fire order is announced within 2 minutes.
5		Fire order is transmitted.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the call for fire.	
	2. Time Stops: FDO announces fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Fire order complete and based on published guidance.	
COORDINATE THREE SIMULTANEOUS ADJUST FIRE MISSIONS		
CONDITION(S):	Three requests for fires are received at the battalion FDC within 90 seconds. All target descriptions are of equal priority and each requires a battalion mass. All missions are adjust fire and require a TOT.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Checks situation map for possible fire support coordination.
2		Fire order meets the requirements of commander's guidance and munitions effects tables.
3		Last fire order is announced within 2 minutes 15 seconds.
4		Fire orders are transmitted.
5		Warning orders are issued to FFE units.
6		Remaining elements of the fire order are transmitted to the FFE units after replot grid has been determined. (KI)
7		Missions are coordinated and tracked.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: FDC receives last element in the third (last) call for fire.	
	2. Time Stops: FDO announces third (last) fire order.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Replot data determined by the adjusting battery and sent to non-adjusting batteries.	
PREPARE SURVEY PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is planning an operation that requires new survey locations and known survey control exists.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Tentative survey order is prepared within 30 minutes after receiving the commander's guidance regarding survey requirements.
2		A fragmentary order is issued to survey party chiefs.
3		Performs map reconnaissance.
4		Performs ground reconnaissance (dependent upon time and resources)

		available).
5		A survey order is issued which details survey methods, checks, and accuracies.
6		Time requirements are established as well as a priority of work.
7		Issues survey order that includes a sketch.
8		Survey party composition, time available and priorities are established.
9		Considers trafficability for PADS and conventional assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
ESTABLISH SURVEY CONTROL WITH PADS WHEN NO SURVEY CONTROL POINT (SCP) IS KNOWN		
CONDITION(S):	Survey operations are being conducted in an area of no known survey control. The survey officer/chief has directed that starting data be assumed. There is high confidence that the assumed location is within 100 meters of the actual location and the assumed height is within +/- 10 meters of actual height. Upon receiving survey data from higher headquarters, conversion to common control will be performed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Assumes location by the most accurate means: Priority (1) Graphic resection Priority (2) Scaled from a map Priority (3) GPS
2		Assumes height by the most accurate means: Priority (1) Map spot Priority (2) GPS
3		Conversion to common control should be performed when higher headquarters has provided survey data for starting (assumed) station.
4		Conversion of direction is performed when the deviation between assumed and higher headquarters direction is +/- 2.0 mils or greater.
5		Conversion of location is performed when the deviation between assumed and higher headquarters location is 10.0 meters of radial error or greater.
6		Conversion of height is performed when the deviation between assumed and higher headquarters height is +/- 2.0 meters or greater.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Allow 30 minutes for determination of starting (assumed) data.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PREPARE A METEOROLOGY PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	Given a tactical situation that requires meteorological support, develop a meteorological plan that satisfies mission requirements.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Directs employment of met teams.
2		Plans met message requirements.
3		Coordinates and establishes methods of met message delivery/transmission.
4		Implements a flight schedule.
5		Plans logistic requirements and resupply of expendables.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONTROL MOVEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit exercises control over subordinate elements. (KI)
3		Unit exercises control over attached elements. (KI)
4		Unit maintains detailed plot on location of all elements. (KI)

5		Subordinate elements operate internal methods of movement control.
6		Elements assigned special missions are controlled. (KI)
7		Operational reports are included in the reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p style="text-align: center;">SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS</p> <p>1. This requirement pertains to the ability of the unit to influence the activities of its components, regardless of the functioning of planned radio networks.</p> <p>2. Methods that apply include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Assignment of clearly defined missions.b. Employment of the tactical net.c. Employment of alternate radio nets.d. Wire.e. Messengers.f. Pyrotechnic signals.g. Verbal orders given on the scene.h. Provision of detailed, prior planned instructions. <p style="text-align: center;">ATTACHED ELEMENTS</p> <p>Unit must have as effective control over attached units as over its subordinate elements. In addition, the unit commander should use the commanders of attached units as a source of recommendations of methods of employment based on capability. Attached units should receive definite missions.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">OPERATIONS PLOTTING</p> <p>1. Maneuver control depends greatly on the unit being fully aware of the location of all friendly units.</p> <p>2. This includes small elements as well as the major components being controlled and such things as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Reconnaissance patrols.b. Outposts.c. Security elements.d. Combat patrols. <p style="text-align: center;">SPECIAL MISSION UNITS</p> <p>The unit must be able to control elements dispatched on any sort of special assignment. This control permits recall if the mission is to be aborted, as well as the provision of support in case of trouble. This aspect of maneuver control may take the form of establishment of one of the various nets for support and control of specially assigned element.</p>	
RESPOND TO DIRECTION FROM HIGHER HEADQUARTERS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is in direct support of a maneuver unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit adheres to the operations SOP of higher headquarters.
2		Unit responds to orders issued by higher headquarters.
3		Unit enters tactical and command nets of higher headquarters.
4		Operational reports that are required by higher headquarters are

	included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise. While the unit possess its own SOP for operations, there is the possibility that the higher headquarters controlling the operation being evaluated may modify certain aspects of that SOP. If that is the case, the evaluator should determine whether or not the unit has informed its subordinate elements of the changes and included specific instructions on those changes in its operation orders.
KEY INDICATORS:	None.

Included ITS. This event requires the performance of most of the ITS's contained within the ITS enclosure and are too numerous to list here.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 4.00

Reference. MCWP 3-42.1, Fire Support in MAGTF Operations.

Battalion - Headquarters - 400 Level (BN-HQ-403) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct command, control, communications and computer operations.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. Battery and battalion position areas have been occupied. The battalion plans and coordinates deployment operations, monitors targeting operations, commands and controls artillery operations, provides fire support coordination center personnel to the maneuver force, maintains liaison with maneuver forces, develops and monitors survivability actions, monitors combat service support to subordinate units, and coordinates voice, facsimile and digital communications to higher, adjacent and subordinate units.

Prerequisites. BN-HQ-402.

External Syllabus Support. Communications equipment and documents, a tactical scenario and an assigned artillery tactical mission.

Evaluator Checklist.

PLAN AND COORDINATE UNIT DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is required to displace while conducting tactical operations. Battery and battalion position areas have been selected.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Movement is planned which supports the scheme of maneuver of the supported unit and is coordinated through the supported unit.
2		Security requirements, time available to move, other traffic restrictions, enemy activity, and coordination requirements are considered.
		Movement orders are issued verbally or in writing. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	MOVEMENT ORDERS SHOULD INCLUDE: 1. Exceptions to SOP's. 2. Displacement sequences. 3. Time unit must be ready to fire. 4. Strip maps (if required). 5. March tables. 6. Contingency signals. 7. Rough azimuth of lay. 8. Location of new position. 9. MSR priority.	

CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS STAFF COORDINATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is preparing a plan for employing artillery. The commander has issued his guidance.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Coordinates with internal staff to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, gain information, provide information, make recommendations, etc.
2		Coordinates with subordinate unit communications personnel to determine doctrinal and unique requirements, gain information, provide information, make recommendations, etc.
3		Coordinates with higher command element/supported unit to receive unique requirements, gain information, provide information, make recommendations, etc.
4		Coordinates with communications personnel of adjacent command elements/supported units to discuss doctrinal issues and unique equipment requirements.
5		Identifies organic personnel and equipment assets available to support the identified needs.
6		Determines and allocates the internal redistribution of assets.
7		Identifies external personnel and equipment assets required to support the identified needs.
8		Requests external support personnel and equipment assets required to support the identified needs.
9		Identifies external support; i.e., frequencies, telecommunications service requests (TSR's), communications guard shifts, AUTODIN access requirements, satellite access requests, etc.
10		Requests external support for frequencies, TSR's, communications guard shifts, AUTODIN access requirements, and satellite access requests, etc.
11		Submits frequency requests based on the use of frequency propagation analysis tools (previous experience, ECAC, Advanced Prophet, etc.).
12		Ensures interoperability of communications hardware, software, and digital connectivity to supported, subordinate, adjacent and higher units.
13		Ensures that the plan for communications/electronic maintenance supports the communications plan.
14		Coordinates messenger services.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PLAN COMMUNICATIONS SECURITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is preparing a plan for employing artillery. The commander has issued his guidance.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Determines emissions security requirements.
2		Determines cryptological security requirements.
3		Determines physical security requirements.
4		Coordinates the control, acquisition, and distribution of COMSEC materials with the CMS custodian.
5		Coordinates the use of and allocation of COMSEC equipment.
6		Ensures and verifies that subordinates possess the proper keying material for the particular operation.
7		Develops and coordinates a COMSEC plan to include COMSEC monitoring and remote keying.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PLAN FOR JOINT/COMBINED OPERATIONS INTEROPERABILITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is in support of a MAGTF involved in joint/combined operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Identifies unique communications requirements; i.e., equipment, format, procedures, etc., based on command and control relationships.

2		Determines liaison communication requirements to include equipment.
3		Verifies CMS capability.
4		Verifies equipment compatibility.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PREPARE TO CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion has been tasked to support a MAGTF involved in tactical operations. The initial planning has been completed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Conducts briefings on overall OP/COMM plan.
2		Briefs staff on communications plan.
3		Conducts rehearsal of communications plan.
4		Install communications based on established priorities.
5		Establishes and checks each circuit.
6		Identifies interference problems.
7		Checks for the compatibility of COMSEC equipment.
8		Verifies COMSEC procedures.
9		Evaluates radio traffic operator proficiency.
10		Follows correct message-handling procedures.
11		Demonstrates procedures for handling high priority messages.
12		Conducts pre-operations inspections, inventory, and operations checks.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Conducts map study to determine antenna selection/siting and retransmission requirements.
2		Selects and employs the proper antenna.
3		High gain/directional antennas are installed when the tactical situation permits.
4		Transmitters and receivers are tuned to the exact assigned operating frequencies.
5		Establishes communications.
6		Employs COMSEC equipment and operators employ COMSEC procedures.
7		Transmits on lowest power necessary to maintain communications.
8		Employs radio retransmission as required.
9		Remote radio set control groups are installed to minimize detection of the COC/FDC location.
10		Internal and external nets are entered as required by mission accomplishment. (KI)
11		All safety precautions are taken to prevent radiation or shock, (i.e., lithium batteries are properly used/discarded, antennas are erected and grounded properly).
12		Transmissions are brief and held to a minimum.
13		Uses authorized prowords, procedural phases, and brevity codes.
14		Words and phrases are spoken clearly and distinctly.
15		Uses phonetic alphabet and phonetic numerals when required.
16		Uses collective call sign properly.
17		Weatherproofs equipment.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Administrative traffic is passed on administrative nets, wire, or courier. Supervisors actively enforce this measure.	
PROVIDE RETRANSMISSION SERVICE		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in a tactical operation.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Ensures ACEOI contains necessary frequencies for retransmission.

2		Retransmission site is well chosen for effective service and minimum vulnerability.
3		Continuous communications are maintained with battalion net control station.
4		Provides automatic retransmission service as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY WIRE COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	This position will be occupied for a period of time adequate to allow for installation of a complete wire system per the communications plan. Wire will be laid to the batteries.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Wire plan meets the operational requirements; identifies subscribers, priority of restoration, etc.
2		Publishes a telephone directory that includes provisions for the backup system.
3		Prepares traffic diagrams.
4		Prepares and distributes line route maps and overlays.
5		Uses existing commercial/DCS facilities as appropriate.
6		Reliable wire circuits are installed to the switchboard, required units, and designated points as rapidly as the situation and available resources permit.
7		Installs wire system according to established priorities.
8		Wires are tagged and protected from foot or vehicular traffic, buried or strung overhead at road crossings, and staked at switchboard locations. (KI)
9		Switchboard is installed after wire circuits are laid to designated location.
10		Telephones are installed after wire circuits are laid.
11		Telephone and switchboard procedures are followed.
12		Updates wire system as changes occur.
13		Adheres to proper field wire construction techniques.
14		Organizes effective system control and technical control.
15		Identifies backup system capable of restoring essential services.
16		Performs troubleshooting immediately, as per TM, if wire communications fail.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	LABELING AND PROTECTING WIRE Standard identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed.	
RECOVER FIELD WIRE		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is displacing and the previous wire circuits are no longer required.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Wire lines are recovered as the situation permits.
2		Recovered wire is cleaned and installed on reels.
3		Recovered wire is tested for complete circuit and repaired as required. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Unit SOP should be established and adhered to for testing and repair of recovered wire.	
PROCESS MESSAGE TRAFFIC		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion COC/FDC is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Incoming and outgoing messages are processed according to assigned priorities and classification.
2		Messages are properly accounted for and logged.
3		Unit SOP is established, available, and observed to preclude errors

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		or misunderstanding in handling of material.
4		Necessary reference copies of all messages are maintained and receipts for all messages are processed.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY SUPPLEMENTARY COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	A requirement for supplementary communications exists. Supplementary communications materiel is available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Unit recognizes the need to employ supplementary communications.
2		Unit communicates using two of the five following supplementary communications methods as per the CEOI. - Signal Panels - Pyrotechnics - PLRS - Visual - Sound
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	The evaluator chooses the two methods used.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ECCM		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. Radio and wire communications have been established. The enemy is employing ECM.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Recognizes ECM's are being used.
2		Only authorized codes are used.
3		Authentication and numerical encryption procedures are used.
4		Radio operators recognize enemy jamming, as opposed to equipment malfunction, and promptly report the activity.
5		Radio operators attempt to operate through enemy jamming activity without revealing its effectiveness.
6		Reports are sent by alternate means if available.
7		Net discipline is maintained using proper procedures.
8		Adheres to emission control (EMCON) conditions.
9		Radios are remoted to the maximum extent practical.
10		Radios and antennas are properly sited and oriented to provide maximum protection from ECM.
11		Terrain masking techniques used where practicable.
12		Expedient directional antennas are employed when feasible.
13		Operator switches to alternate frequency and continues to transmit when directed.
14		Transmitting power is at the minimum required.
15		Wire circuits are installed at every feasible opportunity.
16		"Beadwindow/Gingerbread" procedures are properly used.
17		Reports meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference (MIJI) in a timely manner as per formats and procedures designated.
18		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROVIDE PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Compiles and uses necessary access lists to communications facilities.
2		Ensures the accountability of classified material and equipment.
3		Adheres to current directives applicable to CMS material.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

4		Coordinates and ensures adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces are in place.
5		Establishes emergency action procedures appropriate for the tactical situation.
6		Personnel are knowledgeable of emergency destruction procedures.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM UNIT MISSION WITHOUT RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	While performing the mission, during high tempo operations, the unit loses all radio communications for a period of 2-4 hours.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Submit the appropriate report if electronic countermeasures are suspected of causing the problem.
2		Appropriate actions occur to restore radio communications.
3		Reliance on wire and messengers is increased until nets are restored.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. After loss of communications, spare frequencies may be used for restoration purposes. 2. Events are planned, that would normally require the use of radio communications, during the "reduced communications" time in order to observe the unit's performance without radio nets. 3. Additional information is available from FMFM 3 and FMFM 7-12.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. A communications control center has been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes communication control procedures.
2		Follows installation and restoration priorities.
3		Maintains circuit status.
4		Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
5		Receives and prepares communications status reports as required.
6		Reports communications problems to SYSCON ASAP.
7		Imposes and lifts radio silence in concert with tactical scenario.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONTROL MOVEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit exercises control over subordinate elements. (KI)
3		Unit exercises control over attached elements. (KI)
4		Unit maintains detailed plot on location of all elements. (KI)
5		Subordinate elements operate internal methods of movement control.
6		Elements assigned special missions are controlled. (KI)
7		Operational reports are included in the reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS 1. This requirement pertains to the ability of the unit to influence the activities of its components, regardless of the functioning of planned radio networks. 2. Methods that apply include: a. Assignment of clearly defined missions.	

	<p>b. Employment of the tactical net.</p> <p>c. Employment of alternate radio nets.</p> <p>d. Wire.</p> <p>e. Messengers.</p> <p>f. Pyrotechnic signals.</p> <p>g. Verbal orders given on the scene.</p> <p>h. Provision of detailed, prior planned instructions.</p> <p>ATTACHED ELEMENTS</p> <p>Unit must have as effective control over attached units as over its subordinate elements. In addition, the unit commander should use the commanders of attached units as a source of recommendations of methods of employment based on capability. Attached units should receive definite missions.</p> <p>OPERATIONS PLOTTING</p> <p>1. Maneuver control depends greatly on the unit being fully aware of the location of all friendly units.</p> <p>2. This includes small elements as well as the major components being controlled and such things as</p> <p>a. Reconnaissance patrols.</p> <p>b. Outposts.</p> <p>c. Security elements.</p> <p>d. Combat patrols.</p> <p>SPECIAL MISSION UNITS</p> <p>The unit must be able to control elements dispatched on any sort of special assignment. This control permits recall if the mission is to be aborted, as well as the provision of support in case of trouble. This aspect of maneuver control may take the form of establishment of one of the various nets for support and control of specially assigned element.</p>	
RESPOND TO DIRECTION FROM HIGHER HEADQUARTERS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is in direct support of a maneuver unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit adheres to the operations SOP of higher headquarters.
2		Unit responds to orders issued by higher headquarters.
3		Unit enters tactical and command nets of higher headquarters.
4		Operational reports that are required by higher headquarters are included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise. While the unit possesses its own SOP for operations, there is the possibility that the higher headquarters controlling the operation being evaluated may modify certain aspects of that SOP. If that is the case, the evaluator should determine whether or not the unit has informed its subordinate elements of the changes and included specific instructions on those changes in its operation orders.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.

2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)
5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.
10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS</p> <p>1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</p> <p>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</p> <p>a. Knowledge of collection means available.</p> <p>b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.</p> <p>c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.</p> <p>d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).</p> <p>e. Development of relevant information requirements.</p> <p>INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <p>a. Survey teams.</p> <p>b. Local security patrols.</p> <p>c. OP's.</p> <p>d. LP's.</p> <p>e. Sensors.</p> <p>f. Night vision devices.</p> <p>g. AN/TPQ-46.</p>	
PROCESS REPORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit combat SOP includes reports control procedures.
2		SOP modifications pertinent to a specific operation are identified to higher headquarters.
3		A report control system exists within unit.
4		Reports are submitted on time.
5		Reports received from outside the unit are distributed to staff sections or subordinate elements affected by the information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines the unit performance under this task throughout all phases of the exercise. Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the unit.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0802.6.ALL, 0802.8.ALL, 0802.9.ALL, 2502.1.2, 2502.1.3, 2502.1.4, 2502.1.6, 2502.1.7, 2502.1.8, 2502.1.9, 2502.1.11, 2502.1.14, 2502.2.1, 2502.2.2, 2502.2.4, 2512.1.1, 2512.2.1, 2512.2.23, 2512.3.1, 2512.4.1, 2512.4.4, 2519.1.1, 2519.2.1, 2531.3.24, 2531.3.25, 2537.1.1, 2537.2.1, 2537.2.2, 2537.3.1, 2537.4.1, 2591.1.2, 2591.1.4, 2591.1.5, 2591.1.6, 2591.1.7, 2591.1.10, 2591.1.16, 2591.2.1, 2591.2.2, 2591.3.1, 2591.3.2, 2591.3.3, 2591.4.1. Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battalion - Headquarters - 400 Level (BN-HQ-404) CRP 7.00

Event. Coordinate combat service support.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. Battalion logistics personnel conduct all actions necessary to provide logistic support to organic artillery and attached units to ensure the battalion retains the capability to conduct sustained operations. Actions include developing and executing logistics and maintenance plans, employing engineer assets to enhance mobility, survivability, utilities and counter-mobility. Transportation and movement requirements are planned and coordinated to sustain the flow of supplies and tactical units. Personnel and administrative services, medical treatment, casualty evacuation and food services are provided.

Prerequisites. BN-HQ-402.

External Syllabus Support. An external CSS unit and a tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL 1. Establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets accomplishes control. 2. Control includes: a. Traffic control over particular routes. b. Dispersal of motor pools. c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use.	

	d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets.	
	e. Enforced dispatch procedures.	
COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand Chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROVIDE AND MAINTAIN CLASS V AMMO BASIC LOADS AND SUPPLIES		
CONDITION(S):	Small arms ammunition required and maintained at the batteries require replenishment.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit SOP established.
2		Clear, concise guidance is provided on basic load.
3		Ammunition, to include explosive mines, grenades, and other associated items are available, accounted for and serviceable.
4		Requisition is forecasted and submitted to maintain the required supply rate (RSR), in sufficient time to prevent unnecessary overloading of resupply sources.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PICKUP AND DELIVER DESIGNATED CLASSES OF SUPPLY		
CONDITION(S):	Supplies require distribution from battalion and other issue points to battery elements, as needed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Supplies are obtained from authorized sources.
2		Proper quantities are received and issued per requisition instructions.
3		Timely schedule of delivery is maintained to minimize the probability of contamination or spoilage.
4		Appropriate security maintained to prevent loss, damage, or theft.
5		Delivery is made to proper battery elements as directed by requisitions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S):	Logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Logistics officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities.	
	Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches:	
	1. Open column movement.	
	2. Close column movement.	

	3. Infiltration.	
	4. Terrain March.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march.3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles.4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enemy detection is unlikely.b. Time is a critical factor.c. Considerable travel distance is involved.d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate.2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the section is/has:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Need for maximum command and control.b. Limited visibility.c. Moving through built-up or congested areas.3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enemy has good target acquisition means.b. Enemy has quick reaction means.c. Section requires stealth in moving to a new position.4. Terrain March - movement may be by section or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Open roads are congested.	

<p>b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.</p> <p>c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.</p> <p>d. Soil conditions permit movement.</p> <p>e. Displacement time is not critical.</p> <p>f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position.</p> <p>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</p> <p>1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.</p> <p>2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.</p> <p>3. Consideration of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy.</p> <p>4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.</p> <p>5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.</p> <p>6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.</p>		
PERFORM ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE ON ORGANIC EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Emergency and routine repair is required. The unit has received equipment repair parts.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs emergency repairs on equipment disabled and beyond the repair capability of the operator/crew.
2		Preventive maintenance services are scheduled for organic equipment and performed on time and accurately.
3		Record maintenance actions and logistical readiness actions on a daily basis or as required.
4		Turns in excess and unserviceable items.
5		Prescribed parts are correctly identified, authorized, stored, and secured.
6		Document register, record of demands, and other associated suspense files are properly posted and maintained.
7		Prescribed load list is adjusted correctly based on demand data.
8		
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Per the unit SOP and appropriate equipment manuals.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.5.10, 0811.5.11, 0811.5.12, 0842.5.1, 0842.5.2, 0842.5.3, 0844.7.2, 0844.12.16, 0847.1.32, 0848.13.16.
0802 ITS: Refer to Duty Areas 0802.10, 0802.11, 0802.13.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battalion - Headquarters - 400 Level (BN-HQ-405) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct NBC operations.

Requirement. The battalion is conducting tactical operations. An NBC attack has been made on friendly forces. The battalion establishes an NBC Control Center to survey, monitor and report the situation as required. Subordinate units require decontamination. Battalion personnel

conduct all actions necessary to reconstitute the effected units, continue the mission and survive in an NBC environment.

Prerequisites. BN-HQ-402.

External Syllabus Support. NBCD T/E items, decontamination consumables and equipment, a tactical scenario and a training area large enough to establish a decontamination site.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT HASTY DECONTAMINATION		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion is conducting tactical operations. An NBC attack has been made on friendly forces. Subordinate units require hasty decontamination.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Selects and prepares appropriate site.
2		Supervises MOPP gear exchange.
3		Supervises hasty vehicle washdown.
4		Operates power driven decontamination equipment (PDDE); e.g., M17 LDS, M12A1 SMDA, to remove gross contamination from equipment.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT DELIBERATE DECONTAMINATION		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion is reconstituting. Subordinate units require deliberate decontamination.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Selects and prepares appropriate site.
2		Decontaminates individual gear at station 1 of detailed troop decontamination.
3		Decontaminates overboots and hoods at station 2 of detailed troop decontamination.
4		Supervises overgarment removal at station 3 of detailed troop decontamination.
5		Supervises overboot and glove removal at station 4 of detailed troop decontamination.
6		Monitors personnel at station 5 of detailed troop decontamination.
7		Supervises mask removal at station 6 of detailed troop decontamination.
8		Decontaminates masks at station 7 of detailed troop decontamination.
9		Conducts reissue at station 8 of detailed troop decontamination.
10		Check vehicles and equipment in staging area, for gross contamination areas, before sending to station 1 of detailed equipment decontamination.
11		Prepares vehicles/equipment for decontamination in staging area before sending to station 1 of detailed equipment decontamination.
12		Washes equipment at station 1 of detailed equipment decontamination.
13		Scrubs interior and exterior of vehicles at station 2 of detailed equipment decontamination.
14		Monitors equipment at station 3 of detailed equipment contamination.
15		Rinses equipment at station 4 of detailed equipment decontamination.
16		Checks equipment at station 5 of detailed equipment decontamination.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT NBC CONTROL CENTER OPERATIONS		
CONDITION(S) :	Battalion is conducting tactical operations. An NBC attack has been made on friendly forces.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Provides overall unit NBC defense guidance and possible courses of action to the unit commander.
2		Coordinates troop safety considerations when friendly nuclear/chemical operations are planned.
3		Performs computations necessary to convert basic NBC information to

		the forms required for various calculations/predictions.
4		Plots and displays assembled NBC information.
5		Evaluates assembled NBC information.
6		Disseminates NBC information (intelligence).
7		Prepares and analyzes NBC reports.
8		Determines radiation exposure status category.
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0802.12.1, 0802.12.2, 0802.12.3, 0802.12.4.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 7.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battalion - Headquarters - 400 Level (BN-HQ-406) CRP 7.00

Event. Coordinate intelligence activities and target acquisition.

Requirement. The battalion/regiment is conducting combat operations. The battalion/regiment combat operations center is established. Intelligence information is being received. The higher headquarters intelligence estimate has been received. The battalion/regiment must develop intelligence requirements, conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield, publish and execute intelligence plans, direct and control target intelligence, perform target value analysis, monitor, recommend employment, and manage target acquisition assets.

Prerequisites. BN-HQ-402/RG-HQ-502, RG-HQ-503.

External Syllabus Support. Non-organic target acquisition assets, and higher, adjacent & subordinate combat operations centers providing intelligence information.

Evaluator Checklist.

DEVELOP AND PROCESS TARGET INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received. A radar team with a target production capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Target Processing Center is set up and performs its mission.
2		Target intelligence is developed rapidly enough to exploit targets.
3		All personnel actively seek information on enemy order of battle.
4		Coordination/liaison is established with the supported unit for processing and dissemination of intelligence.
5		Fire capability overlay is developed and maintained.
6		Receives and correlates the production of targets from: - CBR section - FO's - Crater analysis - Subordinate units
7		Interprets data to select targets and target indicators on the basis of the most current target selection standards and available sources.
8		Coordinates and disseminates data as quickly as possible to the appropriate element per established counterfire guidance from attack guidance matrix.
9		Establishes and maintains a counterfire reference grid (CRG) on: - Target production map - FDC situation maps - Order of Battle map - Weapons-locating radar section maps
10		Prepares and maintains a target production map and overlays.
11		Prepares and maintains the target card file.
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

DEVELOP THE PLAN FOR EMPLOYING FIELD ARTILLERY		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's guidance has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Field artillery plan is expeditiously developed based on each phase/major mission of the supported maneuver unit.
2		The plan contains detailed guidance.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP SECURITY PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's guidance has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force capabilities and intentions.
2		Ensures leaders at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all tactical operations.
3		Ensures that security procedures, which comply with rules of engagement, provide for the security of friendly forces.
4		Ensures plans reflect passive security measures such as dispersal, camouflage, hardening of positions, and the use of barriers and obstacles.
5		Directs the use of field expedient measures to protect against enemy lasers as well as directs the use of filters and basic laser eye protection.
6		Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, misinformation, etc.
7		Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and on call.
8		Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for subordinates.
9		Directs and coordinates aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's), and other local security measures.
10		Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
11		Establishes security reaction forces and procedures for communicating with, and transporting the forces.
12		Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of subordinate units; e.g., mass casualties, terrorist acts, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
MANAGE ASSIGNED RADIO NETS		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion operations has been designated as Net Control Station.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Maintains net discipline and control.
2		Ensures published SOP allows for deviations based on the needs of the tactical situation.
3		Monitors FM radio nets assigned to the battalion.
4		Initiates communications checks with subordinate stations only when required.
5		Opens the minimum number of nets necessary to meet traffic volume.
6		Directs subordinate stations to alternate nets as required by traffic volume.
7		Directs retransmission or relay station when required by the tactical situation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY COMMUNICATIONS DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is in position and communications are being established with internal elements, higher headquarters, supported unit, or reinforced unit.	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes alternate means of communication to the extent of available resources.
2		Alternate means of radio communications are employed when available and feasible.
3		Established wire circuits are employed as the primary means of communications.
4		Radio traffic is restricted to "mission essential" and "time critical" use.
5		Status of alternate means of communications is maintained and available to section personnel. (KI)
6		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	INFORMATION AVAILABLE INCLUDES: 1. Traffic diagrams on switchboard(s). 2. Status charts of alternate means and routes.	
PROCESS PLANNED FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's scheme of maneuver, concept of operations, and the fire support plan has been provided.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Processes planned artillery support as rapidly as the situation requires to ensure delivery of fires when required. (KI)
2		Targets are given identification numbers.
3		Planned targets are assigned to units.
4		Determines a method of attack that obtains the desired results at the designated time.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Follows attack guidance matrix.	
PROVIDE TACTICAL SITUATION, INTELLIGENCE PLANS, AND LOCATION OF SUPPORTED UNIT TO THE BATTERIES		
CONDITION(S):	The tactical situation, plans, and disposition of the supported unit are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Provides planned scheme of maneuver and requirements for fire support.
2		Provides current situation.
3		Provides location of friendly units activities.
4		Passes all appropriate intelligence.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	As available, the above listed information maintained by the battalion is provided to the subordinate batteries.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
ADVISE SUPPORTED UNIT(S) ON ENEMY FIRE SUPPORT CAPABILITIES		
CONDITION(S):	As required by the tactical situation and needs of the supported unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Enemy order of battle is maintained to determine fire support capability.
2		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support capabilities (systems, ammunition, and target acquisition).
3		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support employment tactics.
4		Counterfire measures are recommended to suppress enemy fire support.
5		Surveillance operations are recommended to acquire targets.
6		Defensive measures are recommended to protect friendly personnel against enemy fire support.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE		

CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Exploits all collection assets organic to the unit (e.g., NVG's, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
2		Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the higher unit as well as theater assets.
3		Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the unit collection effort.
4		Formulates target lists and scheduling worksheet.
5		Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the unit. (KI)
6		Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
7		Monitors, approves/disapproves CFF's based upon commander's guidance.
8		Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage and casualties.
9		Establishes targeting procedures that ensure timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the list of targets.
10		Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
11		Records target data.
12		Complies with common target designation system established by higher headquarters.
13		Complies with attack guidance matrix.
14		Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the list of targets to include changes in the fire support means requested.
15		Forwards request for schedules to fire support assets to support the scheme of maneuver.
16		Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p style="text-align: center;">TARGET PRIORITIES</p> <p>Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission.</p>	
ADVISE ON ARTILLERY TARGET ACQUISITION MATTERS		
CONDITION(S):	The requirement exists to advise the supported unit commander and staff on artillery target acquisition.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		The supported unit is advised of all artillery target acquisition assets/capabilities.
2		The supported unit is advised of all artillery target acquisition employment options.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT TARGET PROCESSING		
CONDITION(S):	The radar team/section is operating in the hostile mode in a tactical situation. The target acquisition annex to the supported units FA support plan has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		TPC records, process, and routes all hostile weapons locations. (KI)
2		TPC maintains the target production map with the appropriate overlays.
3		TPC gives cueing guidance to its radars.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Maintains all journals, target cards, and any records pertinent to target production.	
PLAN AND COORDINATE RADAR DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Radar(s) is(are) required to displace while conducting tactical operations. General position areas have been selected.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Movement is planned which supports the scheme of maneuver of the supported unit.
2		Supported unit is advised of movement.
3		Security requirements, time available to move, other traffic restrictions, enemy activity and coordination requirements are considered.
4		Movement order is issued verbally, digitally, or in writing. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	The movement order should include: 1. Exceptions to the SOP. 2. Time the radar must be operational.	
TARGET PROCESSING CENTER (TPC) DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The artillery battalion is conducting tactical operations and must displace in support of the maneuver unit's concept of operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Prior to displacement, the Forward TPC solicits and receives from the S-3 or Radar Employment Officer, radar employment requirements and update to the current tactical situation.
2		Main/Forward TPC coordinate communication security and communication requirements.
3		Main TPC advises radar sections of COC displacement and ensures cueing, zones and sector of search are current.
4		From the forward position, the Forward TPC establishes communications on required nets.
5		Main TPC passes information pertaining to current tactical situation and radar employment to the Forward TPC.
6		Updates Situation Report from S-2, S-3.
7		Updates Target Production Map and overlays to reflect current situation.
8		Forward TPC assumes technical/tactical control of radar sections.
9		Main TPC displaces with the COC.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Support requirements are coordinated with the appropriate staff members at the artillery COC. 2. This task is not to be evaluated independent of the COC. The standards can be evaluated during any COC displacement during tactical operations.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP AND MAINTAIN A TARGET PRODUCTION MAP		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit's operation order has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Map is established with required overlays.
2		Map is updated continuously as the situation develops.
3		TPC personnel actively seek information to keep the map current.
4		Coordination and cooperation exists between the TPC, S-2 and S-3.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP AND PROCESS TARGET INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	

1		TPC has assumed tactical/technical control of the radar sections.
2		Target intelligence is developed rapidly enough to exploit targets.
3		Coordination/liaison is established with the supported unit for processing and dissemination of intelligence.
4		Receives and correlates the production of targets from: - Radar sections - S-2 - FO's - Crater analysis - Subordinate, adjacent and senior units
5		Interprets data to select targets and target indicators on the basis of the most current target selection standards.
6		Coordinates and disseminates data as quickly as possible to the appropriate element per the attack guidance matrix.
7		Prepares and maintains a situation map and overlays.
8		Prepares and maintains a target card file.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
MANAGE RADIO CIRCUITS		
CONDITION(S):	The TPC has been designated as Net Control Station for the Radar Intelligence Net.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Maintains net discipline.
2		Initiates communication checks with subordinate stations only when required.
3		Directs subordinate stations to alternate nets, as required.
4		Directs retransmission or relay station when required by the tactical situation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY COMMUNICATIONS DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The TPC is operational and communications are established with radar sections and supported units.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes alternate means of communication to the extent of available resources.
2		Alternate means of radio communications are employed when available and feasible.
3		Radio traffic is restricted to "Mission Essential" and "Time Critical" use.
4		Status of alternate means of communications is maintained.
5		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)
5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.

10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS</p> <p>1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</p> <p>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</p> <p>a. Knowledge of collection means available.</p> <p>b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.</p> <p>c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.</p> <p>d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).</p> <p>e. Development of relevant information requirements.</p> <p>INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <p>a. Survey teams.</p> <p>b. Local security patrols.</p> <p>c. OP's.</p> <p>d. LP's.</p> <p>e. Sensors.</p> <p>f. Night vision devices.</p> <p>g. AN/TPQ-46.</p>	

Included ITS. 0802.16.8, 0802.16.2, 0802.1.3, 0802.16.4, 0803.3.1, 0803.3.2, 0803.3.3, 0803.3.4, 0842.1.1, 0842.1.2, 0842.1.3, 0842.1.4, 0842.3.9, 0844.20.1, 0844.20.3, 0844.20.4, 0844.21.1, 0844.21.2, 0844.21.3, 0844.21.4, 0844.21.5, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.3, 0844.27.1, 0844.27.2, 0848.16.1, 0848.25.1, 0848.25.2, 0848.25.3, 0848.26.2, 0848.26.3, 0848.27.1, 0848.28.2, 0848.29.1, 0848.29.2, 0848.29.3, 0848.30.14, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.35.1, 0861.2.1, 0861.2.2, 0861.2.3, 0861.2.4, 0861.2.5, 0861.2.9, 0861.2.11, 0861.2.15, 0861.2.17, 0861.2.18, 0861.2.20, 0861.2.24, 0861.2.25, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.10, 0861.4.11, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26, 0861.4.27, 0861.11.3, 0861.15.1, 0861.15.2, 0861.15.3, 0861.15.4.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Battalion - Headquarters - 400 Level (BN-HO-407) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct fire support coordination.

Requirement. The battalion is operating in support of a maneuver element that is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The fire support coordination center is established with the maneuver element combat operations center. Air, artillery, rocket, missile, naval surface fires, electronic warfare assets, and organic mortars support the maneuver element. The FSCC personnel

coordinate target engagement, targeting, fire support planning and coordination in support of the scheme of maneuver and per the commander's intent.

Prerequisites. BN-HQ-402, BN-HQ-403, BN-HQ-406.

External Syllabus Support. Fire support assets, electronic warfare support assets, and a maneuver element operations order.

Evaluator Checklist.

ADVISE SUPPORTED UNIT(S) ON ENEMY FIRE SUPPORT CAPABILITIES		
CONDITION(S) :	As required by the tactical situation and needs of the supported unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Enemy order of battle is maintained to determine fire support capability.
2		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support capabilities (systems, ammunition, and target acquisition).
3		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support employment tactics.
4		Counterfire measures are recommended to suppress enemy fire support.
5		Surveillance operations are recommended to acquire targets.
6		Defensive measures are recommended to protect friendly personnel against enemy fire support.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING		
CONDITION(S) :	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Upon receipt of the warning order, begins initial fire support planning based on the commander's intent.
2		Requests available intelligence and combat information on the enemy.
3		Advises the infantry commander on how best to use fire support assets.
4		Participates in the preparation of the fire support estimate of supportability.
5		Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver in either the offense or defense.
6		Recommends priorities of fires, allocation of assets, positioning of artillery and fire support coordination measures.
7		Identifies ammunition and target restrictions, Rules of Engagement (ROE) restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of fire support assets.
8		Provides guidance on the desired effects (i.e., suppress, neutralize, or destroy) on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available.
9		Makes recommendations to the maneuver commander on whether to fire preparation/counter-preparation fires.
10		Analyzes targets for engagement.
11		Determines the NSFS capabilities of the ships assigned in support, i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
12		Develops NSFS, air, and artillery estimates of requirements.
13		Consolidates overall fire support requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
14		Submits, during amphibious operations, a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
15		Submits overall fire support requirements for NSFS and artillery to the higher command in a timely manner.
16		Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace.
17		Develops plans for the employment of smoke.
18		Coordinates and gains approval from the appropriate source when

		considering the employment of FASCAM.
19		Coordinates and integrates subordinate elements fire support plans.
20		Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations. (KI)
21		Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the commander for approval.
22		Publishes the battalion fire support plan as a separate supporting appendix to the operations annex of the operations order (Publication of a fire support execution matrix fulfills this requirement).
23		Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as boundaries, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, fire support coordination measures, and target locations for all prearranged fires.
24		Considers combat service support needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
25		Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.
26		Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, the positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
27		Plans for only essential targets. Identifies priority targets and makes plans to shift as the operation progresses.
28		Plans for fires to cover obstacles, barriers, gaps in friendly lines and flanks.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.	
KEY INDICATORS:	CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT This concept provides guidance in the following areas: 1. General targets or areas that are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver, or be prepared to deliver, fires. 2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation. 3. Exclusive of exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or to accomplish a particular task. 4. Whether a preparation is to be fired, and if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires. 5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).	
FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and limitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
2		Establishes methods to disseminate the information required and requested by the subordinate elements.
3		Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
4		Identifies and disseminates PRF codes to be used.
5		Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications.
6		Maintains the status of all available fire support assets. (KI)
7		Maintains an FSCC journal.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Status maintained per unit SOP.	
EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air,	

	artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Provides recommendations for the establishment and location of fire support coordination measures.
2		Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of other supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets and firing positions for indirect fire support assets.
3		Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in cases of smoke, illumination, and/or fragmentation patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
4		Coordinates with adjacent or higher FSCC's for clearance if fires or the effects of those fires impact in another unit's zone or come within the constraints imposed by a higher FSCC. (KI)
5		Ensures that all fire support coordination measures are clearly marked on fire plan overlays and disseminated to subordinate unit commanders and FO's. (KI)
6		Plans the integration of air and surface-delivered fires using either formal or informal airspace coordination measures.
7		Produces and uses various aids in fire support planning and coordination; e.g., attack guidance matrix or target precedence list, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, fire support matrix and other support plans.
8		Ensures all fire support units are using a common method of timing.
9		Maintains adequate communications to facilitate fire support coordination.
10		Maximizes use of automated digital assets when available.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Coordination performed as per unit SOP.	
EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Exploits all collection assets organic to the unit (e.g., NVG's, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
2		Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the higher unit as well as theater assets.
3		Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the unit collection effort.
4		Formulates target lists and scheduling worksheet.
5		Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the unit. (KI)
6		Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
7		Monitors, approves/disapproves CFF's based upon commander's guidance.
8		Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage and casualties.
9		Establishes targeting procedures that ensure timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the list of targets.
10		Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
11		Records target data.
12		Complies with common target designation system established by higher headquarters.
13		Complies with attack guidance matrix.
14		Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the list of targets to include changes in the fire support means requested.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

15		Forwards request for schedules to fire support assets to support the scheme of maneuver.
16		Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TARGET PRIORITIES	
	Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission.	
PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S) :	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Makes recommendations for the operational employment of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAV's) for target acquisition and damage assessment.
2		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that planned artillery positions support the scheme of maneuver.
3		Submits recommendations for the positioning and zones of fire for NSFS.
4		Integrates the plan for the delivery of naval surface fire support.
5		Recommends allocation of final protective fires (FPF's).
6		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that adequate artillery ammunition is available to accommodate the fire support plan.
7		Coordinates time and location of registration of any fire support asset.
8		Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams.
9		Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priority.
10		Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
11		Provides schedules of fire support to subordinate elements, as required.
12		Recommends allocation of priority of fires and priority targets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0840.2.5, 0840.2.6, 0840.2.7, 0840.2.8, 0840.2.9, 0840.2.11, 0840.2.12, 0840.2.13, 0840.2.14, 0840.2.18, 0840.2.19, 0840.2.20, 0840.2.21, 0840.2.22, 0840.2.23, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.10, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26, 0861.4.27. 0802 ITS: Refer to Duty Areas 0802.04, 0802.08, 0802.09.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. MCWP 3-16, Fire Support Coordination.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Plan for artillery target acquisition.

Requirement. The requirement exists to advise the supported unit commander and staff on artillery radar capabilities and employment options.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario and commander's guidance.

Evaluator Checklist.

ADVISE ON ARTILLERY TARGET ACQUISITION MATTERS		
CONDITION(S):	The requirement exists to advise the supported unit commander and staff on artillery target acquisition.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		The supported unit is advised of all artillery target acquisition assets/capabilities.
2		The supported unit is advised of all artillery target acquisition employment options.
3		Plans logistic requirements of radars assigned to support operations.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PREPARE A RADAR EMPLOYMENT PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	The unit is planning an operation that will require radar support.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
		Organizes and establishes a plan for employment of radar assets.
		Maintains liaison between S-2/S-3 and the radar employment officer.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PLAN AND COORDINATE RADAR DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Radar(s) is(are) required to displace while conducting tactical operations. General position areas have been selected.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Movement is planned which supports the scheme of maneuver of the supported unit.
2		Supported unit is advised of movement.
3		Security requirements, time available to move, other traffic restrictions, enemy activity and coordination requirements are considered.
4		Survey support is coordinated.
5		Movement order is issued verbally, digitally, or in writing.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	The movement order should include: 1. Exceptions to the SOP. 2. Time the radar must be operational.	

Included ITS. 0803.3.1, 0803.3.2, 0803.3.3, 0803.3.4, 0848.27.1,
0802 ITS: 0802.16.01-0802.16.03

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Event. Select a suitable site for the Radar Set AN/TPQ-46.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Requirement. Given a tactical scenario, general position area, area of search, situation overlay, M2 aiming circle, pencil and paper, the radar team performs reconnaissance and selection of a position based on the factors of METT-TS-L and the technical requirements of the radar.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-281.

External Syllabus Support. A position approximately 100 X 100 meters with survey control.

Evaluator Checklist.

SELECT A SUITABLE SITE FOR THE RADAR SET AN/TPQ-46		
CONDITION(S):	Given a tactical scenario, general position area, area of search, situation overlay, M2 aiming circle, pencil and paper. Fire Finder Position Analysis System (FFPAS)	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs map reconnaissance.
2		Perform position analysis using FFPAS.
3		Performs ground reconnaissance (if applicable).
4		Evaluates the requirements using METT-T-SL and technical considerations.
5		Coordinates communications and COMSEC requirements.
6		Coordinates security with adjacent units.
7		Coordinates administrative and logistical requirements.
8		Selects a primary and alternate site that supports the mission.
9		Coordinates deliberate survey.
10		Conducts hasty survey when deliberate survey is not available or maps is not functioning.
11		Conducts manual terrain following with M2 aiming circle.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Hasty survey is done with GPS, the aiming circle, and BUCS or whatever means necessary/available to obtain site easting, northing, and altitude. Also required is azimuth and VA to far stake.	

Included ITS. 0803.3.3, 0803.3.6, 0848.27.2.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Radar Section - 200 Level (SC-RD-283) CRP 6.25

Event. Perform tactical march.

Requirement. Radar section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Radar officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The section performs the appropriate type of tactical march for the situation based upon the factors of METT-TS-L.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-281.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered. Aggressor forces are required to conduct immediate action drills.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH	
CONDITION(S):	Radar section/team has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Radar officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches: 1. Open column movement. 2. Close column movement.

	3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture.
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions.
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.3.3.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Radar Section - 200 Level (SC-RD-284) CRP 6.25

Event. Occupy position.

Requirement. The radar section has arrived at the new radar site. The section must now prepare the AN/TPQ-46 for operations.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-281, SC-RD-282.

External Syllabus Support. A position area with survey control and a radar deployment order.

Evaluator Checklist.

ESTABLISH AND OPERATE RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	Radar section is performing its missions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes communications.
2		Employs COMSEC equipment and operators employ COMSEC procedures.
3		Transmits on lowest power necessary to maintain communications.
4		Requests radio retransmission if required.
5		All safety precautions are taken to prevent radiation or shock (i.e., lithium batteries are properly used/discarded, antennas are erected and grounded properly).
6		Transmissions are brief and held to a minimum.
7		Uses authorized prowords, procedural phrases, and brevity codes.
8		Words and phrases are spoken clearly and distinctly.
9		Uses phonetic alphabet and phonetic numerals when required.
10		Information of use to the enemy is not transmitted in the clear.
11		CEOI is followed; call signs are used.
12		Encryption devices are employed to the maximum extent possible.
13		"Beadwindow" procedures are properly used.
14		"Gingerbread" techniques are employed.

15		Processes incoming messages.
16		Maintains communications.
17		Weatherproofs equipment.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
OCCUPY POSITION		
CONDITION(S):	The radar team/section has arrived at the new radar site. The team/section must now prepare the AN/TPQ-46 for operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Emplaces the radar trailer over surveyed position.
2		Emplaces the S-250 common shelter.
3		Emplaces the MEP 113A generator.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Emplacement time is limited to 20 minutes in daylight and 35 minutes in poor visibility or darkness. This is without camouflage.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
INITIALIZATION OF THE AN/TPQ-46		
CONDITION(S):	The radar team/section has emplace the AN/TPQ-46. The radar operator must now gather and enter all initialization data into the computer.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Operator locates, records, and inputs all initialization data.
2		Radar team chief verifies initialization data entries against initialization printout.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.3.3, 0803.3.5, 0842.1.1, 0842.1.2, 0842.1.3, 0842.2.1, 0842.2.2, 0842.2.3, 0842.2.4, 0842.2.5, 0842.3.1, 0842.3.2, 0842.3.3, 0842.3.4, 0842.3.5, 0842.3.6, 0848.27.4, 0848.28.1, 0848.28.2.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Radar Section - 200 Level (SC-RD-285) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct radar operations.

Requirement. Radar section reports that they are up and operational. Section processes all incoming messages and performs all other operations as required.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-284.

External Syllabus Support. Firing elements to simulate hostile or friendly indirect fire units.

Evaluator Checklist.

RADAR SET AN/TPQ-46 HOSTILE AND FRIENDLY FIRE OPERATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	Radar team/section is in the operational program and is beginning surveillance of assigned sector of search.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Radar operator processes all of the zone messages received.
2		Operator uses all preset and selectable features.
3		Radar operator processes/transmits hostile weapons locations.
4		Radar operator conducts a radar registration.
5		Radar operator conducts radar adjust fire missions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.3.3, 0842.3.7, 0842.3.8, 0842.3.9, 0842.3.10, 0842.3.11, 0842.3.12, 0848.28.1.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Radar Section - 200 Level (SC-RD-286) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct displacement.

Requirement. Radar section is in position. The tactical situation requires the section to conduct a displacement expeditiously. Little time is available to organize and conduct the displacement. This situation may arise as a result of an imminent enemy attack or because of a change in the friendly situation. The battalion has provided the position area and route of march. The section must now prepare the equipment for movement.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-284.

External Syllabus Support. A movement order, a route of march and a new position area to occupy.

Evaluator Checklist.

PREPARE THE RADAR SET AN/TPQ-46 FOR MOVEMENT		
CONDITION(S) :	The radar team/section has received a radar deployment order. The team/section must now prepare the equipment for movement.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Properly stows the antenna for movement.
2		Prepares shelter for movement.
3		Ensures trailer is securely coupled to the truck.
4		Prepares generator for movement.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT A HASTY DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S) :	Radar section is in position. The tactical situation requires the section to conduct a displacement expeditiously. Little time is available to organize and conduct the displacement. This situation may arise as a result of an imminent enemy attack or because of a change in the friendly situation. The battalion has provided the position area and route of march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Minimum essential personnel, equipment, and vehicles are deployed to conduct the reconnaissance, and organize and prepare the new position.
2		Advance party assembles and departs for new position within 5 minutes after section displacement is approved/ordered.
3		Mission essential vehicles depart for new position within 10 minutes after reconnaissance party departs.
4		Advance party establishes entrance routes and locations for vehicles that maximize concealment and facilitate rapid occupation.
5		Mission essential vehicles occupy position and are emplaced.
6		Remainder of the section closes into new position not later than 30 minutes after mission essential vehicles.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: When the section receives the order/approval to displace. 2. Time Stops: a. When last element of the advance party leaves position. b. When last mission essential vehicle leaves position. c. When last section vehicle leaves position. 3. Mission essential vehicles are those the section MUST have to perform its mission. 4. Task is tested in daylight for safety reasons.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.3.3, 0842.4.1, 0842.4.2, 0848.27.3.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Radar Section - 200 Level (SC-RD-287) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct section defense.

Requirement. The section has emplaced the radar and is ordered to improve the position and to integrate the section into the attached unit's defensive scheme. Fighting positions are prepared, sectors of fire are selected. Crew served weapons are prepared for action. Critical supplies are protected from enemy action. Rotation schedules are established to conduct 24-hour operations to include radar surveillance, local security and crew rest. A local security diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-284.

External Syllabus Support. Local Security Chief's scheme of defense guidance, threat information, a training area with authorization to dig fighting positions, and a crew served weapon.

Evaluator Checklist.

MAINTAIN TACTICAL DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S) :	The battery is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines take care to safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew-served, daily.
2		Marines employ their firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Unit leaders do not tolerate random wastage of ammunition.
3		Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
4		Supplies are safeguarded from enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered as litter on the terrain.
5		Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio direction finding (RDF) by unnecessary or repetitious message traffic. Standard prowords and brevity codes are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of rank.
6		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline. (KI)
7		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline. (KI)
8		Marines wear the prescribed uniform, per unit SOP, during all phases of the unit's employment.
9		Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area and inspection of foot and body sores.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	With exceptions evaluators will use the 90 percent rule to determine whether requirements are being met. The exceptions will be communications, noise, and light discipline. These standards will stand literally. If a unit is located by RDF, or observed as a result of noise or light during every phase of the evaluation, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light and noise discipline and communications procedures when no aggressors or EW support is available from the evaluation staff. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline.	
KEY INDICATORS:	NOISE AND LIGHT DISCIPLINE 1. Standards identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed. 2. The number of lights are kept to a minimum and are tactically employed.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC CREW SERVED WEAPONS		

CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions are designated.
2		Weapons are positioned to provide overlapping sectors of fire.
3		Priority of fire is given to the most likely avenues of approach, and PDF's or FPL's are assigned to each weapon.
4		Range cards are prepared and when complete, guns are laid on assigned PDF or FPL.
5		The .50 cal machinegun has proper headspace. (KI)
6		The .50 cal machinegun has proper timing. (KI)
7		Sufficient ammunition is available and personnel are aware of ammunition resupply procedures.
8		Weapons are fired with a heavy volume of flanking and grazing fires at the sustained rate as soon as the enemy is within effective range.
9		Personnel are aware of immediate action in case of a weapon stoppage.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to all weapons and teams/sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>PROPER HEADSPACE</p> <p>Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Ease the recoiling parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting handle and recoiling parts rearward until there is approximate 1/16-inch clearance between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Insert the GO end of the headspace in tight. Insert the NO GO gage. It should not go. If the NO GO gage does go, the headspace is excessive. Proper headspace is present when the GO gage goes and the NO GO gauge does not. A yes evaluation is awarded only if headspace is proper.</p> <p>PROPER TIMING</p> <p>Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Insert the NO FIRE gage between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should not release. If the pin releases, the timing is early. Insert the FIRE gage between the barrel extension and the trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should release.</p>	
EMPLOY ANTITANK WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy reconnaissance units embarked in armor vehicles have been detected operating in rear areas. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. Armor engagement positions are manned.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Armor engagement team positions are selected outside the unit area.
2		Primary and alternate positions provide observation over the main avenues of approach, and range to likely engagement points is known.
3		Personnel immediately employ weapons after identification of the armored vehicle and the vehicle comes in range.
4		Personnel are capable of obtaining hits on vulnerable points on the armored vehicle with 2 rounds.
5		Engages armored targets within 300 meters of the AT-4 positions.
6		The gunner is covered by fire from other weapons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONSTRUCT FIELD FORTIFICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team has occupied a new position area and will be in the position for an unspecified period of time.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Individual fighting holes and machinegun positions are prepared as

		rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
2		Ammunition, equipment, and personnel are protected from blast and small arms fire.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC WEAPONS FOR AIR DEFENSE OF THE POSITION AREA		
CONDITION(S):	Battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations against an enemy who has air parity or limited local air superiority. Battalion S-2/3 has provided battery, section, or team with the air defense weapons control status, current density of enemy air sorties, and enemy air tactics. Enemy sorties consist of flights of two aircraft.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battery, section, or team early warning outposts detect attacking aircraft.
2		At least one machinegun engages first overflight.
3		All small arms and at least 50 percent of Machineguns engage second overflight.
4		Small arms and Machineguns are coordinated in location and firing sequence to force attacking aircraft to fly through a wall of bullets.
5		Section or team chiefs designate proper aiming points for aircraft according to aircraft altitude, axis, and according to type of weapon being fired at aircraft. Section or team responds appropriately.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
UTILIZE COVER, CAMOUFLAGE, AND CONCEALMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is responsible for its own security. The enemy has a night observation capability. The enemy is employing a balanced mix of direct and indirect detection means.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Internal battery, section, or team operations and activities remain under camouflage to the maximum extent possible. (KI)
2		Personnel, equipment, and emplacements beyond the perimeter are concealed.
3		Camouflage materials and cover are correctly obtained, employed, and replaced. (KI)
4		Individual Marines demonstrate an understanding of the use of covered routes and covered positions.
5		Halted elements do not remain in exposed positions, instead move immediately into the nearest covered area.
6		Equipment, tentage, radios, and vehicle parking areas are sited to take advantage of any cover provided by natural terrain features.
7		Weapons firing positions are established in areas that permit the use of natural cover.
8		All individual Marines and crew-served weapons elements make use of available material to improve cover, including overhead cover.
9		Vehicles are prepared for concealment with appropriate screening material and the use of natural camouflage. (KI)
10		Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate screening material or concealed with natural material.
11		Individual and crew-served weapons firing positions are camouflaged to prevent enemy detection.
12		Organization stresses placement of men and materiel in areas that are concealed from casual detection by enemy air assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Evaluator will use the 90 percent rule. 2. This task is applicable throughout the operation. 3. Battery, section, or team is permitted to use available vegetation for camouflage and concealment.	

	4. Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.
KEY INDICATORS:	VEHICLES 1. Must have any light colored tactical markings dulled or covered. 2. Must have reflected surfaces dulled or covered (mirrors and windshield may be removed or covered).

Include ITS. 0842

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-2, Field Artillery cannon Battalion.

Section- Radar Section - 200 Level (SC-RD-288) CRP 6.25

Event. Destroy equipment.

Requirement. The tactical situation requires the destruction of equipment. The section prepares And conducts this destruction as per the operator's TM. The section must simulate this event Every six months and conduct life demolition training once a year.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-284.

External Syllabus Support. Inert demolition training aides for simulation. Demolition range, Combat engineer personnel, and ammunition: M032 5, M131 5, M456 25 ft, M670 10 ft, M766 5.

Evaluator Checklist.

DESTROY EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The equipment is unable to be moved. The battery, section, or team must displace in the face of enemy threats. No means of transport are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Procedures for the destruction by weapons fire, burning, or explosives are known by all Marines.
2		Equipment is methodically destroyed as per the operators TM.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0842.3.12. Also see MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST SGTX.15.8.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. TM 11-5840-354-10, Operator's Manual for Radar Set, AN/TPQ-46.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Processing Section - 200 Level (SC-TP-281) CRP 12.50

Event. Conduct target processing.

Requirement. The radar team/section is operating in the hostile mode in a tactical situation. The target acquisition annex to the supported units FA support plan has been received. TPC maintains a target production map, records, processes, and routes all hostile weapons locations.

Prerequisites. SC-RD-285.

External Syllabus Support. A radar section operating in the hostile fire mode and indirect firing elements conducting live fire simulating enemy units.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT TARGET PROCESSING		
CONDITION(S) :	The radar team/section is operating in the hostile mode in a tactical situation. The target acquisition annex to the supported units FA support plan has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		TPC records, process, and routes all hostile weapons locations.
2		TPC maintains the target production map with the appropriate overlays.
3		TPC give cueing guidance to its radars.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Maintains all journals, target cards, and any records pertinent to target production.	
DEVELOP AND MAINTAIN A TARGET PRODUCTION MAP		
CONDITION(S) :	The supported unit's operation order has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Map is established with required overlays.
2		Map is updated continuously as the situation develops.
3		TPC personnel actively seek information to keep the map current.
4		Coordination and cooperation exists between the TPC, S-2 and S-3.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0842.3.9, 0844.21.1, 0848.29.1, 0848.29.2, 0848.29.3.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 7.50

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Processing Section - 200 Level (SC-TP-282) CRP 12.50

Event. Conduct Target Processing Center displacement.

Requirement. The artillery battalion is conducting tactical operations and must displace in support of the maneuver unit's concept of operations. The TPC conducts all actions necessary to displace with the artillery COC and to provide continuous target processing support.

Prerequisites. SC-TP-281.

External Syllabus Support. An operational artillery COC and an alternate target processing center.

Evaluator Checklist.

TARGET PROCESSING CENTER (TPC) DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The artillery battalion is conducting tactical operations and must displace in support of the maneuver unit's concept of operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N	

	;NE	
1		Prior to displacement, the Forward TPC solicits and receives from the S-3 or Radar Employment Officer, radar employment requirements and update to the current tactical situation.
2		Main/Forward TPC coordinate communication security and communication requirements.
3		Main TPC advises radar sections of COC displacement and ensures cueing, zones and sector of search are current.
4		From the forward position, the Forward TPC establishes communications on required nets.
5		Main TPC passes information pertaining to current tactical situation and radar employment to the Forward TPC.
6		Updates Situation Report from S-2, S-3.
7		Updates Target Production Map and overlays to reflect current situation.
8		Forward TPC assumes technical/tactical control of radar sections.
9		Main TPC displaces with the COC.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Support requirements are coordinated with the appropriate staff members at the artillery COC. 2. This task is not to be evaluated independent of the COC. The standards can be evaluated during any COC displacement during tactical operations.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP AND MAINTAIN A TARGET PRODUCTION MAP		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit's operation order has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Map is established with required overlays.
2		Map is updated continuously as the situation develops.
3		TPC personnel actively seek information to keep the map current.
4		Coordination and cooperation exists between the TPC, S-2 and S-3.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0844.20.1, 0844.21.1, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.3, 0848.28.2, 0848.29.3, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Processing Section - 200 Level (SC-TP-283) CRP 12.50

Event. Develop and process target information.

Requirement. Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received. TPC personnel conduct all actions necessary to convert target information and intelligence into targets for engagement.

Prerequisites. SC-TP-281.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario with target acquisition information and input from a radar section conducting hostile fire operations.

Evaluator Checklist.

DEVELOP AND PROCESS TARGET INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		TPC has assumed tactical/technical control of the radar sections.
2		Target intelligence is developed rapidly enough to exploit targets.
3		Coordination/liaison is established with the supported unit for processing and dissemination of intelligence.
4		Receives and correlates the production of targets from:

		<ul style="list-style-type: none">- Radar sections- S-2- FO's- Crater analysis- Subordinate, adjacent and senior units
5		Interprets data to select targets and target indicators on the basis of the most current target selection standards.
6		Coordinates and disseminates data as quickly as possible to the appropriate element per the attack guidance matrix.
7		Prepares and maintains a situation map and overlays.
8		Prepares and maintains a target card file.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0844.21.1, 0844.21.2, 0844.21.3, 0844.21.4, 0844.21.5, 0848.26.2, 0848.26.3, 0848.29.1, 0848.29.2, 0848.29.3.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Processing Section - 200 Level (SC-TP-284) CRP 12.50

Event. Conduct communications.

Requirement. The TPC is operational and communications are established with radar sections and supported units. The TPC has been designated as Net Control Station for the Radar Telling Net. TPC personnel conduct all actions necessary to maintain continuous communication and discipline on all communication means.

Prerequisites. SC-TP-281.

External Syllabus Support. Communication devices as necessary.

Evaluator Checklist.

MANAGE RADIO CIRCUITS		
CONDITION(S):	The TPC has been designated as Net Control Station for the Radar Telling Net.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Maintains net discipline.
2		Initiates communication checks with subordinate stations only when required.
3		Directs subordinate stations to alternate nets, as required.
4		Directs retransmission or relay station when required by the tactical situation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY COMMUNICATIONS DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The TPC is operational and communications are established with radar sections and supported units.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes alternate means of communication to the extent of available resources.
2		Alternate means of radio communications are employed when available and feasible.
3		Radio traffic is restricted to "Mission Essential" and "Time Critical" use.
4		Status of alternate means of communications is maintained.
5		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

MCO 3501.26A
11 Apr 00

Included ITS. 0844.23.3, 0848.28.2, 0848.30.14.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Div FSCC - 200 Level (SC-FC-201) CRP 12.50

Event. Establish a maneuver unit fire support coordination center.

Requirement. A maneuver element is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, rocket, missile, naval surface, non-lethal electronic warfare, and organic mortar fires support the unit. The maneuver element is establishing a combat operations center. An area within the COC is designated for the FSCC. The section conducts actions to establish the FSCC to include developing a situation map, establishing fire support digital and voice communications with supporting and supported units, determines the status of all available fire support assets and initiates the FSCC journal. Plans are established to conduct 24-hour operations and to provide continuous fire support coordination capability during COC displacements. The FSCC is established when the capability to coordinate all fire support is achieved.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, a maneuver element COC preparing to occupy a position, communications assets and external fire support assets. Use of existing facilities is encouraged.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. 0803.4.1, 0803.4.2, 0803.4.3, 0803.4.4, 0803.4.5, 0803.4.6, 0840.2.13, 0840.2.15, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.10, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26, 0861.4.27
0802 ITS: Refer to Duty Areas 0802.04, 0802.08, 0802.09, 0802.14.03

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Div FSCC - 200 Level (SC-FC-202) CRP 12.50

Event. Develop the maneuver unit's fire support plan and guidance.

Requirement. A fire support must be developed to support each phase of the scheme of maneuver. The section must develop maneuver commander's fire support plan and guidance on priority targets, damage criteria, priority of fires, special fires, firing restrictions, and mission precedence. This plan and guidance must be provided to the supporting field artillery unit.

Prerequisites. SC-FC-201.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario and commander's guidance.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Upon receipt of the warning order, begins initial fire support planning based on the commander's intent.
2		Requests available intelligence and combat information on the enemy.
3		Advises the infantry commander on how best to use fire support assets.
4		Participates in the preparation of the fire support estimate of supportability.
5		Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver in either the offense or defense.
6		Recommends priorities of fires, allocation of assets, positioning of artillery and fire support coordination measures.
7		Identifies ammunition and target restrictions, Rules of Engagement (ROE) restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of fire support assets.
8		Provides guidance on the desired effects (i.e., suppress,

		neutralize, or destroy) on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available.
9		Makes recommendations to the maneuver commander on whether to fire preparation/counter-preparation fires.
10		Analyzes targets for engagement.
11		Determines the NSFS capabilities of the ships assigned in support, i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
12		Develops NSFS, air, and artillery estimates of requirements.
13		Consolidates overall fire support requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
14		Submits, during amphibious operations, a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
15		Submits overall fire support requirements for NSFS and artillery to the higher command in a timely manner.
16		Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace.
17		Develops plans for the employment of smoke.
18		Coordinates and gains approval from the appropriate source when considering the employment of FASCAM.
19		Coordinates and integrates subordinate elements fire support plans.
20		Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations. (KI)
21		Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the commander for approval.
22		Publishes the battalion fire support plan as a separate supporting appendix to the operations annex of the operations order (Publication of a fire support execution matrix fulfills this requirement).
23		Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as boundaries, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, fire support coordination measures, and target locations for all prearranged fires.
24		Considers combat service support needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
25		Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.
26		Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, the positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
27		Plans for only essential targets. Identifies priority targets and makes plans to shift as the operation progresses.
28		Plans fires to cover obstacles, barriers, friendly gaps and flanks.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.	
KEY INDICATORS:	CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT	
	This concept provides guidance in the following areas:	
	1. General targets or areas that are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver, or be prepared to deliver, fires.	
	2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation.	
	3. Exclusive of exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or to accomplish a particular task.	
	4. Whether a preparation is to be fired, and if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires.	
	5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).	
EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N	

	;NE	
1		Provides recommendations for the establishment and location of fire support coordination measures.
2		Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of other supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets and firing positions for indirect fire support assets.
3		Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in cases of smoke, illumination, and/or fragmentation patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
4		Coordinates with adjacent or higher FSCC's for clearance if fires or the effects of those fires impact in another unit's zone or come within the constraints imposed by a higher FSCC. (KI)
5		Ensures that all fire support coordination measures are clearly marked on fire plan overlays and disseminated to subordinate unit commanders and FO's. (KI)
6		Plans the integration of air and surface-delivered fires using either formal or informal airspace coordination measures.
7		Produces and uses various aids in fire support planning and coordination; e.g., attack guidance matrix or target precedence list, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, fire support matrix and other support plans.
8		Ensures all fire support units are using a common method of timing.
9		Maintains adequate communications to facilitate fire support coordination.
10		Maximizes use of automated digital assets when available.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Coordination performed as per unit SOP.	
PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Makes recommendations for the operational employment of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAV's) for target acquisition and damage assessment.
2		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that planned artillery positions support the scheme of maneuver.
3		Submits recommendations for the positioning and zones of fire for NSFS.
4		Integrates the plan for the delivery of naval surface fire support.
5		Recommends allocation of final protective fires (FPF's).
6		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that adequate artillery ammunition is available to accommodate the fire support plan.
7		Coordinates time and location of registration of any fire support asset.
8		Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams.
9		Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priority.
10		Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
11		Provides schedules of fire support to subordinate elements, as required.
12		Recommends allocation of priority of fires and priority targets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.4.1, 0803.4.2, 0803.4.3, 0803.4.4, 0803.4.5, 0803.4.6, 0840.ALL, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.10, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26
0802 ITS: Refer to SC-FC-201

Simulation. No.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Div FSCC - 200 Level (SC-FC-203) CRP 12.50

Event. Process planned fire support.

Requirement. The section processes planned fire support as rapidly as the situation requires to ensure delivery of fires when required.

Prerequisites. SC-FC-201, SC-FC-202.

External Syllabus Support. A fire support plan and commander's attack guidance.

Evaluator Checklist.

PROCESS PLANNED FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's scheme of maneuver, concept of operations, and the fire support plan has been provided.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Processes planned artillery support as rapidly as the situation requires to ensure delivery of fires when required. (KI)
2		Targets are given identification numbers.
3		Planned targets are assigned to units.
4		Determines a method of attack that obtains the desired results at the designated time.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Follows attack guidance matrix.	

Included ITS. 0803.4.2, 0803.4.3, 0803.4.5, 0803.4.6, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26, 0861.8.14, 0861.8.15, 0861.9.8, 0861.9.9. 0802 ITS: Refer to SC-FC-201

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16, Fire Support Coordination.

Section - Div FSCC - 200 Level (SC-FC-204) CRP 12.50

Event. Coordinate fire support.

Requirement. A maneuver element is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, rocket, missile, naval surface, non-lethal electronic warfare, and organic mortar fires support the unit. The section performs appropriate actions to coordinate target engagement, targeting and fire support planning through the application of the fire support principles.

Prerequisites. SC-FC-201.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario and commander's guidance.

Evaluator Checklist.

ADVISE SUPPORTED UNIT(S) ON ENEMY FIRE SUPPORT CAPABILITIES		
CONDITION(S):	As required by the tactical situation and needs of the supported unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Enemy order of battle is maintained to determine fire support capability.
2		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support capabilities (systems, ammunition, and target acquisition).
3		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support employment tactics.
4		Counterfire measures are recommended to suppress enemy fire support.
5		Surveillance operations are recommended to acquire targets.
6		Defensive measures are recommended to protect friendly personnel

		against enemy fire support.
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Upon receipt of the warning order, begins initial fire support planning based on the commander's intent.
2		Requests available intelligence and combat information on the enemy.
3		Advises the infantry commander on how best to use fire support assets.
4		Participates in the preparation of the fire support estimate of supportability.
5		Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver in either the offense or defense.
6		Recommends priorities of fires, allocation of assets, positioning of artillery and fire support coordination measures.
7		Identifies ammunition and target restrictions, Rules of Engagement (ROE) restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of fire support assets.
8		Provides guidance on the desired effects (i.e., suppress, neutralize, or destroy) on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available.
9		Makes recommendations to the maneuver commander on whether to fire preparation/counter-preparation fires.
10		Analyzes targets for engagement.
11		Determines the NSFS capabilities of the ships assigned in support, i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
12		Develops NSFS, air, and artillery estimates of requirements.
13		Consolidates overall fire support requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
14		Submits, during amphibious operations, a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
15		Submits overall fire support requirements for NSFS and artillery to the higher command in a timely manner.
16		Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace.
17		Develops plans for the employment of smoke.
18		Coordinates and gains approval from the appropriate source when considering the employment of FASCAM.
19		Coordinates and integrates subordinate elements fire support plans.
20		Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations. (KI)
21		Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the commander for approval.
22		Publishes the battalion fire support plan as a separate supporting appendix to the operations annex of the operations order (Publication of a fire support execution matrix fulfills this requirement).
23		Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as boundaries, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, fire support coordination measures, and target locations for all prearranged fires.
24		Considers combat service support needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
25		Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.
26		Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, the positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
27		Plans for only essential targets. Identifies priority targets and makes plans to shift as the operation progresses.
28		Plans for fires to cover obstacles, barriers, gaps in friendly lines and flanks.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p align="center">CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT</p> <p>This concept provides guidance in the following areas:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. General targets or areas that are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver, or be prepared to deliver, fires. 2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation. 3. Exclusive of exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or to accomplish a particular task. 4. Whether a preparation is to be fired, and if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires. 5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.). 	
FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and limitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
2		Establishes methods to disseminate the information required and requested by the subordinate elements.
3		Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
4		Identifies and disseminates PRF codes to be used.
5		Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications.
6		Maintains the status of all available fire support assets. (KI)
7		Maintains an FSCC journal.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Status maintained per unit SOP.	
EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Provides recommendations for the establishment and location of fire support coordination measures.
2		Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of other supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets and firing positions for indirect fire support assets.
3		Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in cases of smoke, illumination, and/or fragmentation patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
4		Coordinates with adjacent or higher FSCC's for clearance if fires or the effects of those fires impact in another unit's zone or come within the constraints imposed by a higher FSCC. (KI)
5		Ensures that all fire support coordination measures are clearly marked on fire plan overlays and disseminated to subordinate unit commanders and FO's. (KI)
6		Plans the integration of air and surface-delivered fires using either formal or informal airspace coordination measures.
7		Produces and uses various aids in fire support planning and coordination; e.g., attack guidance matrix or target precedence

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		list, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, fire support matrix and other support plans.
8		Ensures all fire support units are using a common method of timing.
9		Maintains adequate communications to facilitate fire support coordination.
10		Maximizes use of automated digital assets when available.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Coordination performed as per unit SOP.	
EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Exploits all collection assets organic to the unit (e.g., NVG's, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
2		Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the higher unit as well as theater assets.
3		Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the unit collection effort.
4		Formulates target lists and scheduling worksheet.
5		Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the unit. (KI)
6		Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
7		Monitors, approves/disapproves CFF's based upon commander's guidance.
8		Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage and casualties.
9		Establishes targeting procedures that ensure timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the list of targets.
10		Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
11		Records target data.
12		Complies with common target designation system established by higher headquarters.
13		Complies with attack guidance matrix.
14		Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the list of targets to include changes in the fire support means requested.
15		Forwards request for schedules to fire support assets to support the scheme of maneuver.
16		Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TARGET PRIORITIES	
	Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission.	
PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Makes recommendations for the operational employment of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAV's) for target acquisition and damage assessment.
2		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that planned artillery positions support the scheme of maneuver.
3		Submits recommendations for the positioning and zones of fire for

		NSFS.
4		Integrates the plan for the delivery of naval surface fire support.
5		Recommends allocation of final protective fires (FPF's).
6		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that adequate artillery ammunition is available to accommodate the fire support plan.
7		Coordinates time and location of registration of any fire support asset.
8		Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams.
9		Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priority.
10		Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
11		Provides schedules of fire support to subordinate elements, as required.
12		Recommends allocation of priority of fires and priority targets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.4.3, 0803.4.4, 0803.4.5, 0803.4.6, 0840.2.5, 0840.2.6, 0840.2.7, 0840.2.8, 0840.2.9, 0840.2.11, 0840.2.12, 0840.2.13, 0840.2.14, 0840.2.15, 0840.2.18, 0840.2.19, 0840.2.20, 0840.2.21, 0840.2.22, 0840.2.23, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26.

0802 ITS: Refer to

SC-FC-201

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16, Fire Support Coordination.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Provide intelligence and targeting support.

Requirement. The regiment is preparing for or is conducting tactical operations. Information on the enemy situation has been received. The section establishes communications links with higher, lower and adjacent intelligence organizations, conducts intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB), assists in target value analysis, recommends target acquisition asset employment and disseminates reports and information as necessary.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A supported maneuver unit's operations order and an enemy situation.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)
5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.
10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS</p> <p>1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</p> <p>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Knowledge of collection means available.b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).e. Development of relevant information requirements. <p>INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Survey teams.b. Local security patrols.c. OP's.d. LP's.	

	<div>e. Sensors.</div> <div>f. Night vision devices.</div> <div>g. AN/TPQ-46.</div>
--	---

Included ITS. 0803.4.1, 0803.4.2, 0803.4.4, and OCCFLD 02 T&R Manual.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Intelligence - 200 Level (SC-RI-202) CRP 12.50

Event. Produce combat information and intelligence.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The section develops a collection plan, collects priority intelligence requirements and information requirements, coordinates the collection effort, ensures EPW's are screened and initially interrogated, disseminates and exchanges combat information expeditiously, maintains an enemy situation map, and provides all derived target information to regimental operations personnel.

Prerequisites. SC-RI-201.

External Syllabus Support. Scenario information of sufficient quantity to develop intelligence.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)
5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.
10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<div>INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS</div> <div>1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</div> <div>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</div> <div>a. Knowledge of collection means available.</div> <div>b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.</div> <div>c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.</div> <div>d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).</div> <div>e. Development of relevant information requirements.</div>	

	<p style="text-align: center;">INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Survey teams.b. Local security patrols.c. OP's.d. LP's.e. Sensors.f. Night vision devices.g. AN/TPQ-46.
--	--

Included ITS. 0803.4.2, 0803.4.5, and OCCFLD 02 T&R Manual.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Intelligence - 200 Level (SC-RI-203) CRP 12.50

Event. Coordinate the employment of target acquisition (TA) assets.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations, has employed radar and is supported by other TA assets. The section recommends the priorities for observation, sectors of search, general position areas for radars, cueing guidance, locations for regimental observation posts, and flight routes for airborne assets. Information gathered by TA assets to include pilot debriefings is expeditiously processed and disseminated to appropriate commands.

Prerequisites. SC-RI-201, SC-RI-202.

External Syllabus Support. TA assets.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)
5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.
10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p style="text-align: center;">INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS</p> <p>1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the</p>	

	<p>safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</p> <p>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</p> <p>a. Knowledge of collection means available.</p> <p>b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.</p> <p>c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.</p> <p>d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).</p> <p>e. Development of relevant information requirements.</p> <p>INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <p>a. Survey teams.</p> <p>b. Local security patrols.</p> <p>c. OP's.</p> <p>d. LP's.</p> <p>e. Sensors.</p> <p>f. Night vision devices.</p> <p>g. AN/TPQ-46.</p>
--	--

Included ITS. 0803.3.6, 0803.3.7, 0803.4.2, 0803.4.4, 0803.4.5, and OCCFLD 02 T&R Manual.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-121, TTPs for Field Artillery Target Acquisition.

Section - Regt Intelligence - 200 Level (SC-RI-204) CRP 12.50

Event. Plan regimental counterintelligence operations.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The enemy is employing a wide range of intelligence-gathering assets. The section plans, monitors, and coordinates counterintelligence operations including document security, local security patrols, signals security, censorship policy and personnel security clearances.

Prerequisites. SC-BI-201, SC-BI-202.

External Syllabus Support. Aggressor forces performing intelligence gathering.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)

5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.
10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS</p> <p>1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</p> <p>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Knowledge of collection means available.b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).e. Development of relevant information requirements. <p>INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Survey teams.b. Local security patrols.c. OP's.d. LP's.e. Sensors.f. Night vision devices.g. AN/TPQ-46.	

Included ITS. Refer to OCCFLD 02 T&R Manual.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-281) CRP 6.25

Event. Prepare survey plan.

Requirement. The regiment is planning an operation that requires new survey locations and known survey control exists. The team produces a survey plan.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Commander's guidance, known survey control and appropriate topographic products.

Evaluator Checklist.

PREPARE SURVEY PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is planning an operation that requires new survey locations and known survey control exists.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Tentative survey order is prepared within 30 minutes after receiving the commander's guidance regarding survey requirements.
2		A fragmentary order is issued to survey party chiefs.
3		Performs map reconnaissance.
4		Performs ground reconnaissance (dependent upon time and resources available).
5		A survey order is issued which details survey methods, checks, and accuracies.
6		Time requirements are established as well as a priority of work.
7		Issues survey order that includes a sketch.
8		Survey party composition, time available and priorities are established.
9		Considers trafficability for PADS, GPS and conventional assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.1.1, 0803.1.2, 0803.1.8, 0848.13.1, 0844.12.27, 0802.05.06.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16.1A, Field Artillery Survey.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-282) CRP 6.25

Event. Perform tactical march.

Requirement. Survey section has received an order to move to a new position. A reconnaissance has been conducted. Survey officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The team performs the appropriate tactical march for the situation.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-281.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered. Aggressor forces are required to conduct immediate action drills.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH	
CONDITION(S):	Survey section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Survey officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. Conduct one of the following types of tactical marches.

	<div>1. Open column movement.</div> <div>2. Closed column movement.</div> <div>3. Infiltration.</div> <div>4. Terrain march.</div>	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture.
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Section executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<div>1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.</div> <div>2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march.</div> <div>3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles.</div> <div>4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule.</div>	
KEY INDICATORS:	<div>1. Order of march is executed per brief.</div> <div>2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.</div> <div>3. Convoy security measures reflect the current enemy situation.</div>	

Included ITS. 0802.05.08

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-283) CRP 6.25

Event. Extend survey control.

Requirement. The survey team is either provided starting point survey data from a known Survey Control Point (SCP) or uses assumed starting data. Survey officer/chief has directed that control be extended to designated users.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-281.

External Syllabus Support. A training area with survey control.

Evaluator Checklist.

EXTEND CONVENTIONAL SURVEY CONTROL	
CONDITION(S):	The survey team is either provided starting point survey data from a known SCP or uses assumed starting data. Survey officer/chief has directed that

	conventional, GPS, or PADS survey methods be used to extend control to designated users.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Survey is completed rapidly enough to stay abreast of the tactical situation.
2		Survey is established to an accuracy of 1:1,000 or greater on the grid of the battalion SCP.
3		Height is established to +/- 2.0 meters.
4		Direction is established to +/- 0.1 mils times the number of main scheme angles.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	If assumed data for the SCP is used to extend survey control, survey must close on the starting SCP. The survey is considered a closed survey within the prescribed accuracy.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.1.4, 0803.1.5, 0803.1.7, 0844.12.1, 0844.12.3, 0844.12.4, 0844.12.7, 0844.12.8, 0844.12.9, 0844.12.10, 0844.12.11, 0844.12.12, 0844.12.13, 0844.12.14, 0844.12.15, 0844.12.16, 0844.12.18, 0844.12.19, 0844.12.40, 0844.12.41., 0844.12.43, 0844.12.17, 0844.12.47, 0848.13.1, 0848.13.2, 0848.13.3, 0848.13.4, 0848.13.7, 0848.13.9, 0848.13.10, 0848.13.11, 0848.13.17.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16.1A, Field Artillery Survey.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-284) CRP 6.25

Event. Perform connection area and target area survey.

Requirement. In order to obtain first round FFE capability, the Survey Officer has directed that position and target area surveys be connected. Survey officer has directed that conventional assets be used to perform this mission. Survey is completed rapidly enough to stay abreast of the tactical situation.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-281.

External Syllabus Support. A training area consisting of two observation posts and two engageable targets.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM CONNECTION AREA AND TARGET AREA SURVEY		
CONDITION(S):	In order to obtain first round FFE capability the FDC has requested that position and target area surveys be connected. Survey officer has directed that conventional assets be used to perform this mission.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Survey is completed rapidly enough to stay abreast of the tactical situation.
2		Connection survey is established to an accuracy of 1:1,000 or greater on the grid of the battalion SCP.
3		Height is established to +/- 2.0 meters.
4		Direction is established to +/- 0.1 mils times the number of main scheme angles.
5		OP's located to ensure that a minimum apex angle of 300 mils is maintained.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Connection area survey will consist of two observation posts. 2. Target area survey will consist of two engageable targets. 3. Ensure azimuth marks are provided for each OP for orientation purposes.	
KEY INDICATORS:	CONNECTION SURVEY All standards identified as key indicators because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this task had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed.	

Included ITS. 0803.1.4, 0803.1.5, 0803.1.7, 0844.12.4, 0844.12.7, 0844.12.8, 0844.12.3, 0844.12.10, 0844.12.17, 0844.12.47, 0848.13.1, 0848.13.2, 0848.13.3, 0848.13.4, 0848.13.7, 0848.13.9, 0848.13.10, 0848.13.11, 0848.13.17.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16.1A, Field Artillery Survey.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-285) CRP 6.25

Event. Establish directional control.

Requirement. Coordinates of SCP are known, but azimuth is unavailable. The survey team conducts the appropriate astronomic observation to obtain directional control.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-281.

External Syllabus Support. An astronomic body and a survey control point.

Evaluator Checklist.

ESTABLISH DIRECTIONAL CONTROL		
CONDITION(S):	Coordinates of SCP are known, but azimuth is unavailable. The survey plan calls for an astronomic observation. If conducted at night, Polaris should be used.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Determines grid azimuth by astronomic observation by either the sun or a star.
2		Grid azimuth is determined within 0.3 mils of actual azimuth to azimuth mark.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.1.4, 0803.1.5, 0803.1.7, 0844.12.4, 0844.12.6, 0844.12.9, 0844.12.10, 0848.13.1, 0848.13.2, 0848.13.3, 0848.13.10, 0848.13.17, 0848.13.20.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16.1A, Field Artillery Survey.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-286) CRP 6.25

Event. Occupy a static observation post.

Requirement. The survey team is given a mission to conduct a target area survey. The team occupies an observation post applying all the factors of METT. A visibility diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-281.

External Syllabus Support. Topographic products and a training area appropriate for the size of the supported unit's zone of responsibility.

Evaluator Checklist.

OCCUPY A STATIC OBSERVATION POST		
CONDITION(S):	FO is given a zone of responsibility.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs map and ground reconnaissance.
2		Selects best tactical observation post (OP).
3		Occupies OP.
4		Sets up and orients the MULE for direction within 2 minutes (when a known direction to a point is provided).
5		Sets up and orients the MULE using the north seeking gyro (when only

		a map is available).
6		Prepares labeled terrain sketch to include skyline, intermediate crests/ridges, natural features, and manmade objects. Directions and distances to prominent objects or features are labeled. A reference point is identified at least every 200 mils, when applicable.
7		Prepares a visibility diagram to include: his position, grid alignments, 100 mil radial lines, shading of non-visible areas, and identification maps.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0861.1.2, 0861.1.3, 0861.1.5, 0861.3.1, 0861.3.2, 0861.3.3, 0861.3.4, 0861.3.5, 0861.3.6, 0861.7.1, 0861.7.2, 0861.8.1, 0861.8.2.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. MCWP 3-16.6, Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-287) CRP 6.25

Event. Observe high-burst/mean-point-of-impact registration.

Requirement. Survey has an 01-02 base. Regiment directs the survey team to observe a HB/MPI registration in support of an artillery battalion. The battalion provides orienting data. The survey team observes and reports spottings as directed.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-286.

External Syllabus Support. Two surveyed observation posts and ammunition: D540 6, D544 6, N286 6, N523 6.

Evaluator Checklist.

OBSERVE HIGH-BURST/MEAN-POINT-OF-IMPACT REGISTRATION		
CONDITION(S):	Survey has an 01-02 base. Battalion FDC initiates an HB/MPI registration and provides orienting data.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Instrument reading is reported within 20 seconds after each round.
2		Both FO's report azimuth measured to each burst center.
3		01 reports vertical angle.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Time Starts: When rounds impact. 2. Time Stops: Readings are transmitted.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0861.3.34.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. MCWP 3-16.6, Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller.

Section - Survey Team - 200 Level (SC-RS-288) CRP 6.25

Event. Establish survey control with PADS when no survey control point is known.

Requirement. Survey operations are being conducted in an area of no known survey control. The survey officer/chief has directed that starting data be assumed. There is high confidence that the assumed location is within 100 meters of the actual location and the assumed height is within +/- 10 meters of actual height. Upon receiving survey data from higher headquarters, conversion to common control will be performed. The team performs all actions necessary to establish survey control.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-281.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

External Syllabus Support. A training area with survey control. Survey control is necessary to evaluate quality of the work performed in the event.

Evaluator Checklist.

ESTABLISH SURVEY CONTROL WITH PADS WHEN NO SURVEY CONTROL POINT (SCP) IS KNOWN		
CONDITION(S):	Survey operations are being conducted in an area of no known survey control. The survey officer/chief has directed that starting data be assumed. There is high confidence that the assumed location is within 100 meters of the actual location and the assumed height is within +/- 10 meters of actual height. Upon receiving survey data from higher headquarters, conversion to common control will be performed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Assumes location by the most accurate means: Priority (1) Graphic resection Priority (2) Scaled from a map Priority (3) GPS
2		Assumes height by the most accurate means: Priority (1) Map spot Priority (2) GPS
3		Conversion to common control should be performed when higher headquarters has provided survey data for starting (assumed) station.
4		Conversion of direction is performed when the deviation between assumed and higher headquarters direction is +/- 2.0 mils or greater.
5		Conversion of location is performed when the deviation between assumed and higher headquarters location is 10.0 meters of radial error or greater.
6		Conversion of height is performed when the deviation between assumed and higher headquarters height is +/- 2.0 meters or greater.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Allow 30 minutes for determination of starting (assumed) data.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.1.4, 0803.1.5, 0803.1.7, 0844.12.15, 0844.12.17, 0844.12.19, 0844.12.47, 0848.13.1, 0848.13.2, 0848.13.15, 0848.13.17, 0848.13.19.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16.1A, Field Artillery Survey.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-281) CRP 6.25

Event. Plan for meteorology operations.

Requirement. Given a tactical situation that requires meteorological support, develop a meteorological plan that satisfies mission requirements.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist.

PREPARE A METEOROLOGY PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	Given a tactical situation that requires meteorological support, develop a meteorological plan that satisfies mission requirements.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Directs employment of met teams.
2		Plans met message requirements.
3		Coordinates and establishes methods of met message delivery/transmission.
4		Implements a flight schedule.
5		Plans logistic requirements and resupply of expendables.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.2.6, 0848.30.16.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCWP 3-16.5, Field Artillery Meteorology.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-282) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct reconnaissance and selection of position.

Requirement. MET team has received an order that will require displacement. Higher headquarters has designated the position area to be occupied. A reconnaissance party has been designated. Deliberate survey will not be available at the new position; hasty survey methods must be used. The team performs the reconnaissance and selects a position based upon all the factors of METT-TS-L.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-281.

External Syllabus Support. A position area with survey control.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT ADVANCE PARTY RECONNAISSANCE OPERATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	MET team has received an order that will require displacement. Higher headquarters has designated the position area to be occupied. A reconnaissance party has been designated. Deliberate survey will not be available at the new position; hasty survey methods must be used.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs map and/or ground reconnaissance (dependent upon time and resources available). (KI)
2		Selects position that enhances accomplishment of the mission.
3		Sweeps and secures the position.
4		Prepares position to facilitate occupation. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Hasty survey methods must be used to establish location within 500 meters and direction within 1 degree.	
KEY INDICATORS:	RECONNAISSANCE Establishes traffic control measures and provides information to guide the	

	march of the main body.
	POSITION PREPARATION
	1. Marks new position for ease in emplacing shelter, RDF, and other vehicles.
	2. Provides vehicle guides, order of march, and routes into the new position for rapid occupation.
	3. Establishes survey control points for RDF and theodolite positions.
	4. Determines critical angles with the theodolite.

Included ITS. 0803.2.5, 0803.2.7.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-283) CRP 6.25

Event. Perform tactical march.

Requirement. MET team has received an order to move to a new position. A reconnaissance has been conducted. Team leader has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The team performs the appropriate type of tactical march for the situation based upon the factors of METT.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-281, SC-MT-282.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered. Aggressor forces are required to conduct immediate action drills.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S):	MMS team has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Team leader has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. Conduct one of the following types of tactical marches. 1. Open column movement. 2. Closed column movement. 3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Team executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.

10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march.3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles.4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enemy detection is unlikely.b. Time is a critical factor.c. Considerable travel distance is involved.d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate.2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the team is/has:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Need for maximum command and control.b. Limited visibility.c. Moving through built-up or congested areas.3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enemy has good target acquisition means.b. Enemy has quick reaction means.c. Team requires stealth in moving to a new position.4. Terrain March - movement may be by team or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Open roads are congested.b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.d. Soil conditions permit movement.e. Displacement time is not critical.f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position. <p>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.3. Consideration and coordination of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy.4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and	

	should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.
	5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.
	6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.

Included ITS. 0802.2.5.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-284) CRP 6.25

Event. Occupy a position.

Requirement. MET team has reached the release point and needs to be emplaced. Reconnaissance and survey of position is complete. All communications are established as required to execute the mission.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-281, SC-MT-282.

External Syllabus Support. A position area with survey control.

Evaluator Checklist.

EMPLACE MMS FOR RDF MISSION		
CONDITION(S) :	Met team has reached the release point and needs to be emplaced. Reconnaissance and survey of position is complete. The team chief has directed that the system will be set up to facilitate RDF operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Emplaces and grounds shelter.
2		Establishes system power source and system environment appropriate for mission type. (KI)
3		Assembles and orients RDF. (KI)
4		Initializes system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>POWER SOURCE AND SYSTEM ENVIRONMENT</p> <p>1. Power source must be located within 100 feet of the shelter.</p> <p>2. The establishment of the system's environment is based on the type of power being used and the outside temperature.</p> <p>RDF EMPLACEMENT</p> <p>1. RDF must be within 100 feet of the shelter.</p> <p>2. Position selected is fairly level, has no obstructions within 200 meters, and has no objects on the horizon above an angle of 3 degrees.</p>	
ESTABLISH AND OPERATE RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S) :	Survey section is performing its missions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes communications.
2		Employs COMSEC equipment and operators employ COMSEC procedures.
3		Transmits on lowest power necessary to maintain communications.
4		Requests radio retransmission if required.
5		All safety precautions are taken to prevent radiation or shock (i.e., lithium batteries are properly used/discarded, antennas are erected and grounded properly).
6		Transmissions are brief and held to a minimum.
7		Uses authorized prowords, procedural phrases, and brevity codes.

8		Words and phrases are spoken clearly and distinctly.
9		Uses phonetic alphabet and phonetic numerals when required.
10		Information of use to the enemy is not transmitted in the clear.
11		Proper authentication/encryption procedures are used.
12		CEOI is followed; call signs are used.
13		Encryption devices are employed to the maximum extent possible.
14		"Beadwindow" procedures are properly used.
15		"Gingerbread" techniques are employed.
16		Processes incoming messages.
17		Maintains communications.
18		Weatherproofs equipment.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0847.1.1, 0847.1.2, 0847.1.3, 0847.1.4, 0847.1.10, 0847.1.11, 0848.30.7, 0848.30.8, 0848.30.9, 0848.30.10, 0848.30.14.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-285) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct meteorological operations.

Requirement. MET team is emplaced and environment established. System initialization is complete and MMS is fully operational. The team chief has directed that missions be performed to support Computer, Ballistic Type 3, and Fallout Met messages as required to satisfy mission requirements. During a 24-hour day, eight flights are required.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-284.

External Syllabus Support. A position area with survey control.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT AN RDF MISSION AND PRODUCE MET MESSAGES		
CONDITION(S):	Met team is emplaced with power and environment established. System initialization is complete and MMS is fully operational. The team chief has directed that an RDF mission be performed. The team chief requires that Computer, and Fallout Met messages be produced to satisfy mission requirements.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs preflight procedures as per TM.
2		Executes launch.
3		Monitors flight information.
4		Transmits and obtains a printed copy of required met messages. (KI)
5		Terminates mission and saves data.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. When monitoring flight, operator should: a. Check mission time and met data updates. b. Verify signal presence and strength. c. Monitor radiosonde altitude. 2. Evaluator will check validity of messages produced as per FM 6-15.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSMISSION OF MET MESSAGES Transmission of required met messages can be accomplished by digital, voice, or wire methods.	
CONDUCT A NAVAJAID MISSION AND PRODUCE MET MESSAGES		
CONDITION(S):	Met team is emplaced and the section's AC power source is not operable. The	

		team chief has directed that a NAVAID mission be performed. The team chief requires that a Computer Met message be produced to satisfy mission requirements.
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs preflight procedures as per the appropriate TM.
2		Executes launch. (KI)
3		Monitors flight information. (KI)
4		Transmits and obtains a printed copy of required met messages. (KI)
5		Terminates mission and saves data.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Check mission time and met data updates. 2. Verify signal presence and strength. 3. Monitor radiosonde altitude.	
KEY INDICATORS:	LAUNCH PROCEDURES If sufficient vehicle and communication assets are available, a remote launch can be performed. FLIGHT OPERATIONS Mobile mode may be performed in conjunction with this task. TRANSMISSION OF MET MESSAGES Transmission of required met messages can be accomplished by digital, voice, or wire methods.	
CONDUCT A PIBAL MISSION AND PRODUCE MET MESSAGES		
CONDITION(S):	Met team is emplaced and fully operational. The team chief has directed that a PIBAL mission be performed. The team chief requires that a Computer Met message be produced to satisfy mission requirements.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs preflight procedures as per the appropriate TM.
2		Executes launch.
3		Monitors flight information.
4		Transmits and obtains a printed copy of required met messages. (KI)
5		Terminates mission.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSMISSION OF MET MESSAGES Transmission of required met messages can be accomplished by digital, voice, or wire methods.	

Included ITS. 0803.2.5, 0847.1.12, 0847.1.13, 0847.1.14, 0847.1.15, 0847.1.16, 0847.1.17, 0847.1.18, 0847.1.19, 0847.1.20, 0847.1.21, 0847.1.22, 0847.1.23, 0847.1.24, 0847.1.25, 0847.1.26, 0847.1.28, 0848.30.1, 0848.30.2, 0848.30.3, 0848.30.4, 0848.30.13, 0848.30.15.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 3.00

Reference. MCWP 3-16.5, Field Artillery Meteorology.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-286) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct a displacement.

Requirement. MET team is emplaced and fully operational. The tactical situation requires the team to conduct a displacement expeditiously. Little time is available to organize and conduct the displacement. The situation may arise as a result of imminent enemy attack or because of a change in the friendly situation. Higher headquarters provided the position area and route of march. The team displaces as directed.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-284.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario and commander's guidance.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT A HASTY DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Met team is emplaced and fully operational. The tactical situation requires the team to conduct a displacement expeditiously. Little time is available to organize and conduct the displacement. The situation may arise as a result of imminent enemy attack or because of a change in the friendly situation. Higher headquarters provided the position area and route of march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Minimum essential personnel, equipment, and vehicles are deployed to conduct the reconnaissance, and organize and prepare the new position.
2		Advance party assembles and departs for new position after team displacement is approved/ordered.
3		Mission essential vehicles depart for new position after reconnaissance party departs.
4		Advance party establishes entrance routes and locations for vehicles that maximize concealment and facilitate rapid occupation.
5		Mission essential vehicles occupy position and are emplaced.
6		Remainder of the team closes into new position after mission essential vehicles.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Task is not timed and is tested in daylight due to high cost of equipment and for safety reasons. No camouflage nets are used during this task due to possible damage to equipment. All members of the team should display sense of urgency.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0803.2.7.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-287) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct team defense.

Requirement. The team has emplaced the MMS and is ordered to improve the position and to integrate the team into the supported unit position defensive scheme. Fighting positions are prepared, direct fire sectors of fire and targets are selected. Crew served weapons are prepared for action. Rotation schedules are established to conduct 24-hour operations to include MET missions, local security and crew rest. A local security diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-284.

External Syllabus Support. Local security chief's scheme of defense guidance, threat information, a training area with authorization to dig fighting positions, and a crew served weapon.

Evaluator Checklist.

MAINTAIN TACTICAL DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines take care to safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew-served, daily.
2		Marines employ their firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Unit leaders do not tolerate random wastage of ammunition.
3		Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
4		Supplies are safeguarded from enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered as litter on the terrain.
5		Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio direction finding (RDF) by unnecessary or repetitious message traffic. Standard prowords and brevity codes are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of rank.
6		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise

		discipline. (KI)
7		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline. (KI)
8		Marines wear the prescribed uniform, per unit SOP, during all phases of the unit's employment.
9		Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area and inspection of foot and body sores.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	With exceptions evaluators will use the 90 percent rule to determine whether requirements are being met. The exceptions will be communications, noise, and light discipline. These standards will stand literally. If a unit is located by RDF, or observed as a result of noise or light during every phase of the evaluation, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light and noise discipline and communications procedures when no aggressors or EW support is available from the evaluation staff. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline.	
KEY INDICATORS:	NOISE AND LIGHT DISCIPLINE 1. Standards identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed. 2. The number of lights are kept to a minimum and are tactically employed.	
CONDUCT LOCAL SECURITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Briefs and inspects Marines assigned local security missions.
2		Emplaces Marines and weapons in positions which offer good observation, fields of fire, concealment and cover, and which control enemy avenues of approach.
3		Employs local security measures that provide for early warning, continual observation counter-reconnaissance screening, and avoids the element of enemy surprise.
4		Considers active and passive OPSEC measures to prevent surprise and to provide greater security.
5		Positions elements to allow for their mutual support, emphasizing coordinated surveillance, exchange of information, coordinated fires, final protective fires, and fires to cover obstacles and dead space.
6		Plans primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
7		Plans a defense in depth through the use of supplementary positions and the planned use of shifting fires into threatened areas.
8		Employs a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop the movement of enemy forces.
9		Prepares a sketch of the defensive diagram.
10		Terrain features incidental to defense of the position area are depicted.
11		Incorporates the howitzers direct fire capabilities.
12		Coordinates defense with higher headquarters and adjacent units for mutual support, considering the fires of organic weapons, support from infantry mortars, artillery, NGF, and air.
13		Ensures flexibility is built into the plan through the identification of a reaction force, centralized control over supporting fires, shifting of fires, and supplementary positions.
14		Establishes observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's) and dispatches local security patrols.
15		Maintains dispersion of elements and individuals throughout the operation to avoid excessive casualties.
16		Maximizes use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.
17		Establishes communications between BOC, and/or local security chief and all automatic weapons positions.
18		Ensures critical signals are planned and understood by all Marines.

19		Uses available time effectively in the planning and preparation of defensive positions.
20		Patrols are not dispatched in repetitive or stereotyped patterns.
21		Patrols and other early warning means are used to fill gaps not covered by OP's and LP's.
22		Patrol routes are coordinated with adjacent units and higher headquarters.
23		Security elements report departure and return per established procedures.
24		Conducts a day and night rehearsal of the reaction force.
25		Disseminates combat information acquired by security elements throughout the unit, and as required to higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard. Evaluation should take place during a time when the unit is in a static position.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC CREW SERVED WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions are designated.
2		Weapons are positioned to provide overlapping sectors of fire.
3		Priority of fire is given to the most likely avenues of approach, and PDF's or FPL's are assigned to each weapon.
4		Range cards are prepared and when complete, guns are laid on assigned PDF or FPL.
5		The .50 cal machinegun has proper headspace. (KI)
6		The .50 cal machinegun has proper timing. (KI)
7		Sufficient ammunition is available and personnel are aware of ammunition resupply procedures.
8		Weapons are fired with a heavy volume of flanking and grazing fires at the sustained rate as soon as the enemy is within effective range.
9		Personnel are aware of immediate action in case of a weapon stoppage.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to all weapons and teams/sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	PROPER HEADSPACE Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Ease the recoiling parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting handle and recoiling parts rearward until there is approximate 1/16-inch clearance between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Insert the GO end of the headspace in tight. Insert the NO GO gage. It should not go. If the NO GO gage does go, the headspace is excessive. Proper headspace is present when the GO gage goes and the NO GO gauge does not. A yes evaluation is awarded only if headspace is proper. PROPER TIMING Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Insert the NO FIRE gage between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should not release. If the pin releases, the timing is early. Insert the FIRE gage between the barrel extension and the trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should release.	
EMPLOY ANTITANK WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy reconnaissance units embarked in armor vehicles have been detected operating in rear areas. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. Armor engagement positions are manned.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N	

	;NE	
1		Armor engagement team positions are selected outside the unit area.
2		Primary and alternate positions provide observation over the main avenues of approach, and range to likely engagement points is known.
3		Personnel immediately employ weapons after identification of the armored vehicle and the vehicle comes in range.
4		Personnel are capable of obtaining hits on vulnerable points on the armored vehicle with 2 rounds.
5		Engages armored targets within 300 meters of the AT-4 positions.
6		The gunner is covered by fire from other weapons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONSTRUCT FIELD FORTIFICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team has occupied a new position area and will be in the position for an unspecified period of time.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Individual fighting holes and machinegun positions are prepared as rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
2		Ammunition, equipment, and personnel are protected from blast and small arms fire.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC WEAPONS FOR AIR DEFENSE OF THE POSITION AREA		
CONDITION(S):	Battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations against an enemy who has air parity or limited local air superiority. Battalion S-2/3 has provided battery, section, or team with the air defense weapons control status, current density of enemy air sorties, and enemy air tactics. Enemy sorties consist of flights of two aircraft.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battery, section, or team early warning outposts detect attacking aircraft.
2		At least one machinegun engages first overflight.
3		All small arms and at least 50 percent of machineguns engage second overflight.
4		Small arms and machineguns are coordinated in location and firing sequence to force attacking aircraft to fly through a wall of bullets.
5		Section or team chiefs designate proper aiming points for aircraft according to aircraft altitude, axis, and according to type of weapon being fired at aircraft. Section or team responds appropriately.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
UTILIZE COVER, CAMOUFLAGE, AND CONCEALMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is responsible for its own security. The enemy has a night observation capability. The enemy is employing a balanced mix of direct and indirect detection means.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Internal battery, section, or team operations and activities remain under camouflage to the maximum extent possible. (KI)
2		Personnel, equipment, and emplacements beyond the perimeter are concealed.
3		Camouflage materials and cover are correctly obtained, employed, and replaced. (KI)
4		Individual Marines demonstrate an understanding of the use of covered routes and covered positions.

5		Halted elements do not remain in exposed positions, instead move immediately into the nearest covered area.
6		Equipment, tentage, radios, and vehicle parking areas are sited to take advantage of any cover provided by natural terrain features.
7		Weapons firing positions are established in areas that permit the use of natural cover.
8		All individual Marines and crew-served weapons elements make use of available material to improve cover, including overhead cover.
9		Vehicles are prepared for concealment with appropriate screening material and the use of natural camouflage. (KI)
10		Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate screening material or concealed with natural material.
11		Individual and crew-served weapons firing positions are camouflaged to prevent enemy detection.
12		Organization stresses placement of men and materiel in areas that are concealed from casual detection by enemy air assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Evaluator will use the 90 percent rule. 2. This task is applicable throughout the operation. 3. Battery, section, or team is permitted to use available vegetation for camouflage and concealment. 4. Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	VEHICLES 1. Must have any light colored tactical markings dulled or covered. 2. Must have reflected surfaces dulled or covered (mirrors and windshield may be removed or covered).	

Included ITS. See MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 3.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Section - Meteorology Team - 200 Level (SC-MT-288) CRP 6.25

Event. Destroy equipment.

Requirement. The tactical situation requires the destruction of equipment. The team prepares and conducts this destruction as per the operator's TM. The section must simulate this event every six months and conduct live demolition training once a year.

Prerequisites. SC-MT-284.

External Syllabus Support. Inert demolition training aids for simulation. Demolition range, combat engineer personnel, and ammunition: M032 5, M131 5, M456 25 ft, M670 10 ft, M766 5.

Evaluator Checklist.

DESTROY EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The equipment is unable to be moved. The battery, section, or team must displace in the face of enemy threats. No means of transport are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL: Y;N ;NE	
1		Procedures for the destruction by weapons fire, burning, or explosives are known by all Marines.
2		Equipment is methodically destroyed as per the operators TM.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0847.1.30, 0847.1.31. Also see MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST SGTX.15.8.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 3.00

Reference. TM 08625A-10/1-1, Operator's Manual, Meteorological Data Systems
AN/TMQ-31 and Radiosonde Set ML-659V/TMQ-41A.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

2-A-285

Event. Develop the concept for communication support.

Requirement. The regiment is preparing a plan for employing artillery. The commander has issued his guidance. The section conducts all actions necessary to produce a communications plan considering METT-TS-L.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario and applicable communications documents.

Evaluator Checklist.

DEVELOP THE BATTALION COMMUNICATIONS PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is preparing a plan for employing artillery. The commander has issued his guidance.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Conducts mission analysis and identifies implied communication tasks.
2		Requests available intelligence/information on enemy EEI's, terrain, and weather from available sources.
3		Reviews task organization and command relationships.
4		Prepares a communications estimate of supportability based on proposed courses of action.
5		Refines concept of communications support based on commander's guidance.
6		Reviews communications SOP, contingency plans, lessons learned, etc.
7		Validates internal and external needs for current and future operations.
8		Determines watch schedules.
9		Submits recommended prioritization of communications, radio and wire, requirements.
10		Plans the communications system to allow for both systems control and technical control.
11		Employs circuit profile analysis techniques.
12		Wire route plans are established and disseminated.
13		Tactical radio nets are tailored for mission accomplishment.
14		Develops and distributes the communications electronic operation instructions (CEOI's) based on the concept of operations and procedures contained in the COMMSOP.
15		Communications officer is knowledgeable of AUTODIN, DSN (AUTOVON), and STU-III availability en route to the area of operations.
16		Reviews overall communication readiness.
17		Necessary details to clarify and coordinate communications/electronic activities that are not covered in battalion SOP are included.
18		Prepares a communications plan (Annex K) that provides for reliability, speed, flexibility, and security as well as for communications contingency plans.
19		Publishes and disseminates the communications plan in a timely manner.
20		Identifies logistics requirements; e.g., consumables, POL, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 2502.1.2, 2502.1.3, 2502.1.4, 2502.1.7, 2502.1.8, 2502.1.9, 2502.1.11, 2502.1.14, 2502.2.1, 2502.2.2, 2502.2.4, 2519.1.1, 2519.2.1, 2537.1.1, 2537.2.1, 2537.2.2, 2537.3.1, 2537.4.1, 2591.1.2, 2591.1.4, 2591.1.5, 2591.1.6, 2591.1.7, 2591.1.10, 2591.1.16, 2591.2.1, 2591.3.1, 2591.3.2, 2591.3.3, 2591.4.1.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Communications - 200 Level (SC-RC-292) CRP 10.00

Event. Conduct artillery electronics and communications-electronics maintenance.

Requirement. Regimental artillery electronics and communications assets are in need of repair. The section coordinates mobile maintenance contact team actions, conducts repairs within capability, evacuates repairable assets to supporting CSS unit and destroys unrepairable equipment as directed. The section prepares and conducts this destruction as per the operator's TM. The section must simulate this destruction every six months and conduct live demolition training once a year.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291.

External Syllabus Support. Class IX repair parts, inert demolition training aides for simulation, demolition range, combat engineer personnel, and ammunition: M032 5, M131 5, M456 25 ft, M670 10 ft, M766 5.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT MAINTENANCE ON COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Possesses equipment record jackets and appropriate TM's (r TM extract).
2		Performs PMCS per applicable TM's.
3		Operator identifies required corrective maintenance.
4		Follows proper procedures for induction into the maintenance cycle.
5		Personnel perform only maintenance within their authorized echelon.
6		Coordinates class IX requirements.
7		Coordinates all maintenance outside his capability and above his echelon.
8		Adheres to safety procedures.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 2502.4.2, 2502.4.3, 2512.4.3, 2519.4.1,2531.4.1, 2531.4.2, 2531.4.3, 2537.4.1, 2591.4.1, 28xx not identified. Also see MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST SGTX.15.8.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Applicable Technical Manuals.

Section - Regt Communications - 200 Level (SC-RC-293) CRP 10.00

Event. Establish a communications control center.

Requirement. The regimental headquarters is occupying a position. The section conducts actions to establish a communications control center in order to maintain circuit status, coordinate troubleshooting, manage net restoration, prioritize maintenance efforts, and coordinate communications with internal and external units.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291.

External Syllabus Support. Internal and external units communicating tactical traffic.

Evaluator Checklist.

PROCESS MESSAGE TRAFFIC		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion COC/FDC is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Incoming and outgoing messages are processed according to assigned priorities and classification.

2		Messages are properly accounted for and logged.
3		Unit SOP is established, available, and observed to preclude errors or misunderstanding in handling of material.
4		Necessary reference copies of all messages are maintained and receipts for all messages are processed.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROVIDE PHYSICAL SECURITY MEASURES		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Compiles and uses necessary access lists to communications facilities.
2		Ensures the accountability of classified material and equipment.
3		Adheres to current directives applicable to CMS material.
4		Coordinates and ensures adequate personnel and safeguards for security of communications spaces are in place.
5		Establishes emergency action procedures appropriate for the tactical situation.
6		Personnel are knowledgeable of emergency destruction procedures.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM UNIT MISSION WITHOUT RADIO COMMUNICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	While performing the mission, during high tempo operations, the unit loses all radio communications for a period of 2-4 hours.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Submit the appropriate report if electronic countermeasures are suspected of causing the problem.
2		Appropriate actions occur to restore radio communications.
3		Reliance on wire and messengers is increased until nets are restored.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. After loss of communications, spare frequencies may be used for restoration purposes. 2. Events are planned, that would normally require the use of radio communications, during the "reduced communications" time in order to observe the unit's performance without radio nets. 3. Additional information is available from FMFM 3 and FMFM 7-12.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT COMMUNICATIONS CONTROL		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting a tactical operation. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. A communications control center has been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes communication control procedures.
2		Follows installation and restoration priorities.
3		Maintains circuit status.
4		Coordinates troubleshooting effort.
5		Receives and prepares communications status reports as required.
6		Reports communications problems to SYSCON ASAP.
7		Imposes and lifts radio silence in concert with tactical scenario.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 2502.1.2, 2502.1.3, 2502.1.4, 2502.1.7, 2502.1.8, 2502.1.9, 2502.1.11, 2502.1.14, 2502.2.1, 2502.2.2, 2502.2.4, 2519.1.1, 2519.2.1, 2531.3.24, 2537.1.1, 2537.2.1, 2537.2.2, 2537.3.1, 2537.4.1, 2591.1.2, 2591.1.4, 2591.1.5, 2591.1.6, 2591.1.7, 2591.1.10, 2591.1.16, 2591.2.1, 2591.3.1, 2591.3.2, 2591.3.3, 2591.4.1.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Regt Communications - 200 Level (SC-RC-294) CRP 10.00

Event. Coordinate the installation and maintenance of a tactical local and wide area network.

Requirement. The regimental headquarters is occupying a position. The section conducts actions to establish networks in order to facilitate fire direction, fire support coordination, personnel management, supply and maintenance management with internal and external units.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291.

External Syllabus Support. Internal and external units communicating tactical traffic via networks.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Regt Communications - 200 Level (SC-RC-295) CRP 10.00

Event. Maintain continuous command and control during displacement.

Requirement. The regimental command post must displace due to the tactical situation. The section conducts actions to provide the regiment with the ability to maintain continuous communications during displacement of the command post. Minimum communications is defined as conduct of fire, maneuver tactical, fire direction and communication coordination links with higher, lower and adjacent units.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291, SC-RC-293.

External Syllabus Support. Internal and external units communicating tactical traffic via voice and networks.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BC-295.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Radio - 200 Level (SC-RR-291) CRP 12.50

Event. Establish and operate radio communications.

Requirement. The regiment has established a command post. The communications officer has completed and distributed the communications plan. The section establishes radio communications as required by the plan.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291.

External Syllabus Support. A communications plan and radio communications equipment and supplies.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RA-291.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-RA-291.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 7.50

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Regt Radio - 200 Level (SC-RR-292) CRP 12.50

Event. Provide retransmission services.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The situation requires retransmission of radio traffic. The section provides this support as required.

Prerequisites. SC-RR-291.

External Syllabus Support. A transmitting unit located at a distance requiring a retransmission site.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RA-292.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-RA-292.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Regt Radio - 200 Level (SC-RR-293) CRP 12.50

Event. Employ supplementary communications.

Requirement. A requirement for supplementary communications exists. Supplementary communications materiel is available. The section employs supplementary communications as necessary.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario requiring supplementary communications.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RA-293.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-RA-293.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Regt Radio - 200 Level (SC-RR-294) CRP 12.50

Event. Perform unit mission without radio communications.

Requirement. While performing the mission, during high tempo operations, the unit loses all radio communications for a period of 2-4 hours. The section conducts appropriate actions to restore radio communications and employs other communications means to continue the mission.

Prerequisites. SC-RR-291.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario directing the loss of radio communications.
Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RA-294.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-RA-294.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Wire - 200 Level (SC-RW-291) CRP 25.00

Event. Employ wire communications.

Requirement. This position will be occupied for a period of time adequate to allow for installation of a complete wire system per the communications plan. Wire will be laid to the battalions.

Prerequisites. SC-RC-291.

External Syllabus Support. A regimental and battalion COC's established in the field and a communications plan.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-WI-291.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-WI-291.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Section - Regt Wire - 200 Level (SC-RW-292) CRP 25.00

Event. Recover field wire.

Requirement. The regiment is displacing and the previous wire circuits are no longer required. Section personnel conduct all actions necessary to retrieve, clean and test wire for future use.

Prerequisites. SC-RW-291.

External Syllabus Support. An installed wire system to another tactical unit.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-WI-292.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-WI-292.

Simulation. No.

Reference. MCO 1510.83A, ITS for Operational Communications OCCFLD 25.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Logistics - 200 Level (SC-RL-201) CRP 12.50

Event. Prepare for and conduct embarkation.

Requirement. The regiment has been alerted to conduct expeditionary operations. The section conducts actions necessary to prepare the unit for embarkation as required by the identified transportation method. Embarkation is conducted as planned.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. An expeditionary OPLAN or OPORDER, transportation assets and CSS units as required.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BL-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BL-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. LFM 03, Amphibious Embarkation.

Section - Regt Logistics - 200 Level (SC-RL-202) CRP 12.50

Event. Establish a regimental logistics train.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The section establishes mobile combat service support facilities to include ammunition, supply, medical, transportation, maintenance, food service, administration and organic CSS operations element to support organic and attached units. The section develops and maintains a CSS situation map and status board.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 300 X 300 meters with a sufficient road network to tactically emplace the regimental logistics train and communications equipment.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL	
	1. Control is accomplished by establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets.	

	2. Control includes: a. Traffic control over particular routes. b. Dispersal of motor pools. c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use. d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets. e. Enforced dispatch procedures.	
COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROVIDE AND MAINTAIN CLASS V AMMO BASIC LOADS AND SUPPLIES		
CONDITION(S):	Small arms ammunition required and maintained at the batteries require replenishment.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit SOP established.
2		Clear, concise guidance is provided on basic load.
3		Ammunition, to include explosive mines, grenades, and other associated items are available, accounted for and serviceable.
4		Requisition is forecasted and submitted to maintain the required supply rate (RSR), in sufficient time to prevent unnecessary overloading of resupply sources.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PICKUP AND DELIVER DESIGNATED CLASSES OF SUPPLY		
CONDITION(S):	Supplies require distribution from battalion and other issue points to battery elements, as needed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Supplies are obtained from authorized sources.
2		Proper quantities are received and issued per the requisition.
3		Timely schedule of delivery is maintained to minimize the probability of contamination or spoilage.
4		Appropriate security maintained to prevent loss, damage, or theft.
5		Delivery is made to proper elements as directed by requisitions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0802.11.1, 0802.11.2, 0802.11.3.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Conduct tactical march.

Requirement. The logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. The S-4 has issued his movement order. A reconnaissance has been conducted. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The section conducts the appropriate tactical march for the situation.

Prerequisites. SC-RL-202.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S):	Logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Logistics officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches: 1. Open column movement. 2. Close column movement. 3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain March.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march. 3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles. 4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS 1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when: a. Enemy detection is unlikely. b. Time is a critical factor.	

- c. Considerable travel distance is involved.
- d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate.
- 2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the section is/has:
 - a. Need for maximum command and control.
 - b. Limited visibility.
 - c. Moving through built-up or congested areas.
- 3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when:
 - a. Enemy has good target acquisition means.
 - b. Enemy has quick reaction means.
 - c. Section requires stealth in moving to a new position.
- 4. Terrain March - movement may be by section or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:
 - a. Open roads are congested.
 - b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.
 - c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.
 - d. Soil conditions permit movement.
 - e. Displacement time is not critical.
 - f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position.

ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN

- 1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.
- 2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.
- 3. Consideration of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy.
- 4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.
- 5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.
- 6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.

Included ITS. 0802.5.4, 0802.5.5.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Logistics - 200 Level (SC-RL-204) CRP 12.50

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Defend the logistics train.

Requirement. The logistics train is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability. Logistics train personnel conduct all actions necessary to defend the logistics train and safeguard personnel and equipment. A local security diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. SC-RL-202.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, a training area with authorization to dig fighting positions and aggressor forces (optional).

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BL-204.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BL-204.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Supply - 200 Level (SC-RS-201) CRP 15.00

Event. Establish a supply point.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The supply section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to establish a regimental supply point in order to requisition, receive, account, safeguard, and distribute supplies to organic and attached units. The section develops and maintains a supply support unit situation map.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters with sufficient road network to establish mobile resupply.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BS-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BS-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Supply - 200 Level (SC-RS-202) CRP 20.00

Event. Provide supply support.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The logistics train is established. Organic and attached units request resupply. The section conducts actions to verify requests, draw items to satisfy requests, coordinate delivery or pick up, and requisition items to maintain minimum days of supply as directed.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-201.

External Syllabus Support. An external CSS unit to provide supply support.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BS-202.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BS-202.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Supply - 200 Level (SC-RS-203) CRP 15.00

Event. Retrograde excess supplies.

Requirement. The pace of regimental operations has resulted in excess serviceable supplies being left on the battlefield. The section coordinates actions to recover and reissue supplies as necessary.

Prerequisites. SC-RS-202.

External Syllabus Support. Supplies left in two battalion positions reported as excess to be recovered by regimental supply, material handling equipment, banding material, pallets and transportation assets.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BS-202.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BS-202.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Food Service - 200 Level (SC-RF-201) CRP 25.00

Event. Establish a field mess.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The food service section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to establish a field mess in order to receive and store subsistence items, prepare and distribute meals, maintain equipment and dispose of waste.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters, mobile electric power and subsistence items.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TRANSPORTATION CONTROL</p> <p>1. Control is accomplished by establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets.</p> <p>2. Control includes:</p> <p>a. Traffic control over particular routes.</p> <p>b. Dispersal of motor pools.</p> <p>c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use.</p> <p>d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets.</p> <p>e. Enforced dispatch procedures.</p>	

Included ITS. 0802.05.17. 33xx not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Section - Regt Food Service - 200 Level (SC-RF-202) CRP 25.00

Event. Provide food service support.

Requirement. The field mess is established. The section conducts actions to prepare meals, coordinate delivery or pick up to prevent spoilage, ensure sanitation is maintained, requisition supplies and maintain equipment.

Prerequisites. SC-RF-201.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters, mobile electric power, subsistence items and units requiring food service support.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RF-201.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-RF-201.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Motor Transport - 200 Level (SC-RM-211) CRP 12.50

Event. Establish a tactical motor pool.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The motor transport section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to establish a tactical motor pool in order to safeguard fuel and ammunition vehicles, set up maintenance facilities, control internal traffic flow, manage the dispatch of vehicles and convoys departing the battalion area and coordinate vehicle recovery operations.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 100 X 100 meters with sufficient road network. Use of existing expeditionary facilities such as combat towns or support bases is encouraged and defense of such facilities must be considered.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-211.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-211.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Section - Regt Motor Transport - 200 Level (SC-RM-212) CRP 12.50

Event. Conduct motor transport operations.

Requirement. The motor pool is established. The section conducts actions to control transportation, track motor transport asset availability, prioritize maintenance efforts, recover vehicles, and maintain status on POL usage and availability. The section develops and maintains a bulk fuel, CSS repair facility and MSR situation map.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-211.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 100 X 100 meters with sufficient road network. Use of existing expeditionary facilities such as combat towns or support bases is encouraged and defense of such facilities must be considered.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-211.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-211.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Section - Regt Motor Transport - 200 Level (SC-RM-213) CRP 12.50

Event. Conduct motor transport maintenance.

Requirement. Regimental transportation assets are in need of repair. The section coordinates mobile maintenance contact team actions, conducts repairs within capability, evacuates repairable assets to supporting CSS unit and destroys unrepairable equipment as directed. The section prepares and conducts this destruction as per the operator's TM. The section must simulate this destruction every six months and conduct live demolition training once a year.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-211, SC-RM-212.

External Syllabus Support. Class IX repair parts, inert demolition training aides for simulation, demolition range, combat engineer personnel, and ammunition: M032 5, M131 5, M456 25 ft, M670 10 ft, M766 5.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-BM-213.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-BM-213.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Section - Regt Motor Transport - 200 Level (SC-RM-214) CRP 12.50

Event. Provide transportation support.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Subordinate units need additional transportation support for a limited duration. The section conducts actions to plan, organize, and provide transportation support in order to augment a subordinate unit.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-211, SC-RM-212.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario requesting transportation support and a subordinate unit to support.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S) :	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TRANSPORTATION CONTROL</p> <p>1. Control is accomplished by establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets.</p> <p>2. Control includes:</p> <p>a. Traffic control over particular routes.</p> <p>b. Dispersal of motor pools.</p> <p>c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use.</p> <p>d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets.</p> <p>e. Enforced dispatch procedures.</p>	
PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S) :	Logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Logistics officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities.	
	Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches:	

	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open column movement. 2. Close column movement. 3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain March. 	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march. 3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles. 4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule. 	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy detection is unlikely. b. Time is a critical factor. c. Considerable travel distance is involved. d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate. 2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the section is/has: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Need for maximum command and control. b. Limited visibility. c. Moving through built-up or congested areas. 3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy has good target acquisition means. b. Enemy has quick reaction means. c. Section requires stealth in moving to a new position. 4. Terrain March - movement may be by section or echelon and is conducted 	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

	<p>generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. Open roads are congested.b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.d. Soil conditions permit movement.e. Displacement time is not critical.f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position. <p>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.3. Consideration of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy.4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.
--	---

Included ITS. Motor Transport not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. FMFM 4-9, Motor Transport.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-201) CRP 6.25

Event. Establish an engineer support site.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The regimental logistics train is occupying a position. An area has been selected for the regimental engineers to occupy. The section conducts actions necessary to establish an engineer equipment staging area, maintenance facility, and operations coordination center with a situation map and equipment status charts in order to provide engineer support to the regiment.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 100 X 100 meters, a tactical scenario and a regimental logistics train preparing to occupy a position.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-202) CRP 6.25

Event. Construct field fortifications and protective structures.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Subordinate units request engineer construction support to enhance survivability. The supported unit will provide security. The section advises the supported unit, plans and constructs howitzer pits, ammunition bunkers, vehicle revetments, and tactical fighting positions utilizing organic earthmoving equipment. The section must construct two different fortifications or structures.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets, a supported unit requesting construction support, construction material as required and a training area with authorization to construct field fortifications or protective structures.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. 1345.2.4, 1345.2.5, 1345.2.15, 1345.4.1, 1345.6.6.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-203) CRP 6.25

Event. Provide material handling equipment support.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Subordinate units request MHE support for a limited duration. The supported unit will provide security. The section conducts actions to estimate equipment required, plan, coordinate and execute MHE support utilizing organic MHE assets.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets, a supported unit requesting MHE support, and palletized material as required.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N	

	;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL	
	1. Control is accomplished by establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets.	
	2. Control includes:	
	a. Traffic control over particular routes.	
	b. Dispersal of motor pools.	
	c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use.	
	d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets.	
	e. Enforced dispatch procedures.	
PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S):	Logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Logistics officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities.	
	Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches:	
	1. Open column movement.	
	2. Close column movement.	
	3. Infiltration.	
	4. Terrain March.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)

9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march. 3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles. 4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule. 	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy detection is unlikely. b. Time is a critical factor. c. Considerable travel distance is involved. d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate. 2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the section is/has: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Need for maximum command and control. b. Limited visibility. c. Moving through built-up or congested areas. 3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy has good target acquisition means. b. Enemy has quick reaction means. c. Section requires stealth in moving to a new position. 4. Terrain March - movement may be by section or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Open roads are congested. b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely. c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished. d. Soil conditions permit movement. e. Displacement time is not critical. f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position. <p>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area. 2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned. 3. Consideration of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy. 	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

	<div>4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.</div> <div>5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.</div> <div>6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.</div>
--	---

Included ITS. 0802.05.17, 1345.1.1, 1345.2.9, 1345.2.14, 1345.4.1, 1345.6.6.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-204) CRP 6.25

Event. Reduce field expedient obstacles.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. A unit within the regiment has occupied a position that has enemy field expedient obstacles emplaced that are interfering with the unit's ability to conduct operations. The unit requests engineer support to reduce the obstacles. The supported unit will provide security. The section conducts actions to estimate equipment required, plan, coordinate and execute obstacle reduction utilizing organic engineer assets.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets, a training area with emplaced field expedient obstacles, and authorization to remove dirt and trees.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. 1345.1.1, 1345.2.4, 1345.2.5, 1345.2.14, 1345.2.15, 1345.4.1, 1345.6.6.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-205) CRP 6.25

Event. Construct and maintain main supply routes.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Main supply routes to subordinate units are inadequate or nonexistent. The supported unit will provide security. The section conducts actions to estimate equipment required, plan, coordinate and construct roads or improve trafficability as directed utilizing organic engineer assets.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets and a training area with authorization to construct a field expedient MSR.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. 1345.1.1, 1345.2.4, 1345.2.5, 1345.2.14, 1345.2.15, 1345.4.1, 1345.6.6.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-206) CRP 6.25

Event. Construct field expedient obstacles.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. A mobile enemy threatens the regiment. The regiment has been tasked to construct obstacles to counter the enemy threat in support of the overall barrier plan. The regiment must provide security. The section conducts actions to estimate equipment required, plan, coordinate and construct field expedient obstacles in support of the barrier plan utilizing organic engineer assets.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets, a barrier plan, and training area with authorization to construct field expedient obstacles.

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT LOCAL SECURITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Briefs and inspects Marines assigned local security missions.
2		Emplaces Marines and weapons in positions which offer good observation, fields of fire, concealment and cover, and which control enemy avenues of approach.
3		Employs local security measures that provide for early warning, continual observation counter-reconnaissance screening, and avoids the element of enemy surprise.
4		Considers active and passive OPSEC measures to prevent surprise and to provide greater security.
5		Positions elements to allow for their mutual support, emphasizing coordinated surveillance, exchange of information, coordinated fires, final protective fires, and fires to cover obstacles and dead space.
6		Plans primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
7		Plans a defense in depth through the use of supplementary positions and the planned use of shifting fires into threatened areas.
8		Employs a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop the movement of enemy forces.
9		Prepares a sketch of the defensive diagram.
10		Terrain features incidental to defense of the position area are depicted.
11		Incorporates the howitzers direct fire capabilities.
12		Coordinates defense with higher headquarters and adjacent units for mutual support, considering the fires of organic weapons, support from infantry mortars, artillery, NGF, and air.
13		Ensures flexibility is built into the plan through the identification of a reaction force, centralized control over supporting fires, shifting of fires, and supplementary positions.
14		Establishes observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's) and dispatches local security patrols.
15		Maintains dispersion of elements and individuals throughout the operation to avoid excessive casualties.
16		Maximizes use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.
17		Establishes communications between BOC, and/or local security chief and all automatic weapons positions.
18		Ensures critical signals are planned and understood by all Marines.
19		Uses available time effectively in the planning and preparation of defensive positions.
20		Patrols are not dispatched in repetitive or stereotyped patterns.
21		Patrols and other early warning means are used to fill gaps not covered by OP's and LP's.
22		Patrol routes are coordinated with adjacent units and higher headquarters.
23		Security elements report departure and return per established procedures.
24		Conducts a day and night rehearsal of the reaction force.
25		Disseminates combat information acquired by security elements throughout the unit, and as required to higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently	

INSTRUCTIONS:	deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard. Evaluation should take place during a time when the unit is in a static position.
KEY INDICATORS:	None.

Included ITS. 1345.1.1, 1345.2.4, 1345.2.9, 1345.2.14, 1345.2.15, 1345.4.1, 1345.6.6.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-207) CRP 6.25

Event. Provide mobile electric power and refrigeration support.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The regimental headquarters and logistics train are occupying positions and require mobile electric power and refrigeration support. The section conducts actions to estimate equipment required, plan, coordinate and install a electrical power generation and distribution system and a refrigeration system utilizing organic engineer assets.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. A regimental command post or logistic train established in a training area or expeditionary facility requiring electrical and refrigeration support.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TRANSPORTATION CONTROL 1. Control is accomplished by establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets. 2. Control includes: a. Traffic control over particular routes. b. Dispersal of motor pools. c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use. d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets.	

	e. Enforced dispatch procedures.
--	----------------------------------

Included ITS. 0802.05.17, 1141.2.2, 1141.3.1, 1141.3.2, 1141.3.5, 1141.3.6, 1141.3.8, 1141.3.14, 1141.4.1, 1141.8.2, 1141.8.4, 1141.8.5, 1141.8.6, 1161.1.1, 1161.2.1, 1161.3.1, 1161.3.2, 1161.3.3, 1161.3.4, 1161.3.13, 1161.5.1.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Engineers - 200 Level (SC-RE-208) CRP 6.25

Event. Conduct engineer equipment maintenance.

Requirement. Regimental engineer equipment assets are in need of repair. The section coordinates mobile maintenance contact team actions, conducts repairs within capability, evacuates repairable assets to supporting CSS unit and destroys unrepairable equipment as directed. The section prepares and conducts this destruction as per the operator's TM. The section must simulate this destruction every six months and conduct live demolition training once a year.

Prerequisites. SC-RE-201.

External Syllabus Support. Class IX repair parts, inert demolition training aides for simulation, demolition range, combat engineer personnel, and ammunition: M032 5, M131 5, M456 25 ft, M670 10 ft, M766 5.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE ON ORGANIC EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S) :	Emergency and routine repair is required. The unit has received equipment repair parts.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs emergency repairs on equipment disabled and beyond the repair capability of the operator/crew.
2		Preventive maintenance services are scheduled for organic equipment and performed on time and accurately.
3		Record maintenance actions and logistical readiness actions on a daily basis or as required.
4		Turns in excess and unserviceable items.
5		Prescribed parts are correctly identified, authorized, stored, and secured.
6		Document register, record of demands, and other associated suspense files are properly posted and maintained.
7		Prescribed load list is adjusted correctly based on demand data.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Per the unit SOP and appropriate equipment manuals.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DESTROY EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S) :	The equipment is unable to be moved. The battery, section, or team must displace in the face of enemy threats. No means of transport are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Procedures for the destruction of the equipment by weapons fire, burning, or explosives are known by all Marines.
2		Equipment is methodically destroyed as per the operator's TM.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. The Marines are tested on their knowledge of destruction techniques on their own equipment; i.e., cannoneers are tested on the destruction of howitzers, communications personnel are tested on the destruction of communications equipment, etc. 2. Standard number two is simulated.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. See MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST SGTX.15.8.

MCO 3501.26A
11 Apr 00

Simulation. No.

Reference. Applicable Technical Manuals.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

2-A-312

Section - Regt Medical - 200 Level (SC-RM-201) CRP 10.00

Event. Establish a regimental aid station.

Requirement. The logistics train is occupying a position. The medical section has been given a location within the logistics train area. The section conducts actions necessary to provide triage, advanced trauma life support, evacuation, and routine sick call facilities in support of the regiment. The section develops and maintains a medical support unit situation map.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A training area 50 X 50 meters and an HLZ for aeromedical evacuation.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Medical - 200 Level (SC-RM-202) CRP 10.00

Event. Conduct triage.

Requirement. Casualties are occurring within the regiment. The RAS is established. The section conducts actions to triage patients as they arrive in order to prioritize treatment, identify the extent of injuries, provide basic life support and relieve severe pain. Treatment is provided to EPW's per current regulations.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as simulated casualties. As each patient is triaged, one evaluator is required to assess the correct diagnosis by the medical officer or corpsman.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RM-201.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Medical - 200 Level (SC-RM-203) CRP 10.00

Event. Conduct advanced trauma life support.

Requirement. Regimental casualties have been triaged. The medical section conducts actions to maintain airways, manage burns, immobilize fractures, manage shock and control pain to prevent further injury. EPW's are treated per current regulations.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as simulated casualties. As each patient is treated, one evaluator is required to assess the correct treatment by the medical officer or corpsman.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RM-201.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Medical - 200 Level (SC-RM-204) CRP 10.00

Event. Coordinate medical evacuation.

Requirement. Regimental casualties require further medical treatment and must be evacuated. The medical section coordinates ground and air medical evacuation with appropriate internal and external organizations to expeditiously remove casualties from the regimental aid station.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as simulated casualties. As each patient is selected for evacuation, one evaluator is required to assess the correct decision by the medical officer or corpsman.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-RM-201.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Medical - 200 Level (SC-RM-205) CRP 10.00

Event. Provide sick call services.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Regimental personnel require routine medical support beyond the capability of organic battalion medical personnel and Headquarters battery corpsmen. The medical section provides routine sick call to assist in the regimental preventive medicine actions.

Prerequisites. SC-RM-201.

External Syllabus Support. None.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM PREVENTIVE MEDICINE SERVICES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in position and facilities have been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Inspections are conducted on a daily basis of mess, troops facilities, and head areas.
2		Actual and potential health hazards are identified.
3		Immunization is provided.
4		Communicable diseases are identified and treated.
5		Measures of prevention and control of disease are recommended.
EVALUATOR	None.	

INSTRUCTIONS:	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.

Included ITS. Not identified.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-RJ-201) CRP 10.00

Event. Perform strength accounting.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Personnel losses and gains have occurred. The section conducts all actions necessary to maintain accurate personnel status of subordinate and attached units including casualty reporting, evacuation, friendly prisoner of war reporting, missing in action reporting, and initial graves registration. A regimental S-1 element must be established in an expeditionary environment.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Units conducting tactical operations.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to SC-AJ-202.

Included ITS. Refer to SC-AJ-202.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-RJ-202) CRP 10.00

Event. Process replacements.

Requirement. Combat replacements have arrived at the regiment. The section assigns replacements according to command priorities, conducts all administrative and personnel actions to prepare the individuals for combat to include clothing and equipment inventory, briefings on the unit mission, unit SOP's, current friendly and enemy situations and coordinates transportation to subordinate units.

Prerequisites. SC-RJ-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as combat replacements.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. Not identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Section - Regt Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-RJ-203) CRP 10.00

Event. Coordinate and establish a temporary enemy prisoner of war collection point.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Subordinate units have captured enemy personnel. The section performs actions to collect, secure, process and expeditiously evacuate Pews to collection points in the rear.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as Pews, a training area 50 X 50 meters and concertina wire.

Evaluator Checklist.

PROCESS EPW'S		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. The unit's local security has captured enemy soldiers.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		EPW's are searched immediately after capture; weapons, documents, and items of potential intelligence value are tagged and evacuated

		at the same time as EPW's; personnel items, protective clothes and equipment are returned to the EPW's. (KI)
2		Individual Marines handling EPW's segregated them by type and sex - officers, NCO's, unranked, civilian combatants, etc. (KI)
3		EPW's are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
4		EPW's are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
5		Marines handling EPW's ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from the hazards of enemy fire.
6		Perishable information obtained from EPW's is reported immediately to higher headquarters.
7		Enemy casualties receive the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is applicable in all cases except those wherein the Senior Evaluator's instructions prohibit the capture of any member of the aggressor force or the introduction of actors into the exercise play.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p style="text-align: center;">SEARCH PROCEDURES</p> <p>1. Search. EPW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of EPW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each EPW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.</p> <p>2. Equipment. Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously observed before may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of such equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.) clothing and rations.</p> <p>3. Documents. A captured document is any piece of recorded information that has been in the hands of the enemy. Only those documents that appear to be of particular intelligence value should be taken from an EPW upon capture. When such documents are taken from an EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of an EPW be taken.</p> <p>4. Personal Effects. Except as indicated above, EPW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money; valuables; protective equipment, such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items or equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record thereof maintained.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SEGREGATION</p> <p>The segregation of EPW's by categories first requires that individual EPW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.</p>	

Included ITS. See MCO 1510.89 and MCO 1510.90, MBST.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - Regt Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-RJ-204) CRP 10.00

Event. Perform public affairs.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. The section performs public affairs functions to provide personnel with information of a military and domestic nature, screens news releases for prohibited information, and coordinates the ACTIVITY of news media representatives requesting access to members of the unit.

Prerequisites. SC-RJ-201.

External Syllabus Support. Personnel acting as media representatives.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. None identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP and directives.

Section - Regt Adjutant - 200 Level (SC-RJ-205) CRP 10.00

Event. Provide mail services.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. Mail has been delivered to the regiment and mail has been gathered from subordinate units for dispatch. The section performs actions to safeguard, break down, and coordinate delivery to subordinate units and forward outgoing mail as the tactical situation permits.

Prerequisites. SC-RJ-201.

External Syllabus Support. An external unit providing mail services.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. None identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Section - HQ Btry Admin - 200 Level (SC-HA-201) CRP 25.00

Event. Prepare personnel for deployment.

Requirement. The regiment is tasked to deploy for expeditionary operations. The section conducts all actions to administratively prepare personnel for deployment including pay, legal assistance, dependent preparation, remain behind personal property security, service record updating and identification card and tag verification.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. An operations plan or order with sufficient personnel administration guidance.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. 0180.5.9.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Section - HQ Btry Admin - 200 Level (SC-HA-202) CRP 25.00

Event. Perform personnel administration.

Requirement. The battery is conducting operations. Personnel within the battery require administrative support. The section performs all administrative actions to process promotions, recommend awards, maintain service records, resolve pay problems, prepare fitness reports, coordinate legal assistance and perform legal administration. A battery administration element must be established in an expeditionary environment.

Prerequisites. SC-HA-201.

External Syllabus Support. None.

Evaluator Checklist. N/A.

Included ITS. Not identified at this time.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Local SOP.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Event. Conduct reconnaissance and selection of position.

Requirement. Battery has received an order that will require its displacement. Regiment has designated a position area to be occupied. An advance party has been designated. The advanced party conducts all actions necessary for the battery to efficiently occupy the position based upon the tactical situation.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. A position approximately 600 X 600 meters, a regimental movement order and a squad size aggressor force (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT RECONNAISSANCE AND SELECTION OF POSITION		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion has been provided the infantry scheme of maneuver and expected direction of attack. Adequate time is permitted to conduct a reconnaissance. Higher headquarters has established position area. An advance party has been designated.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Personnel, equipment, and vehicles are included in the advance party to prepare the new position, mark the route if necessary, and provide for defense of the advance party.
2		Advance party mustered and briefed.
3		Position location is coordinated with infantry unit.
4		Position is appropriate to tactical requirements.
5		Performs map, ground, and/or air reconnaissance (dependent upon time and resources available).
6		Advance party establishes traffic control measures and relays information to facilitate march of main body.
7		Reconnaissance determines route that maximizes trafficability and minimizes chances of detection and attack by enemy.
8		Selected position permits the battalion to accomplish its mission.
9		Sweeps and secures position.
10		Selects the following sites: FDC/COC, communications and antennae, supply, vehicle dispersal area, local security positions, and other sites as required.
11		Pickup point, track plan, entrance and exit points briefed.
12		Organization of the position provides optimum concealment, and establishment of early warning and automatic weapons emplacement.
13		Position improvement continues until the main body arrives.
14		Selects the alternate position.
15		Briefs the occupation of the alternate position and prepares it as time allows.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator should become familiar with unit SOP.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.4.12, 0811.4.16, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.2, 0844.24.1, 0844.24.2, 0844.24.3, 0844.25.1, 0848.26.1, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.32.1, 0848.32.2, 0848.32.3, 0848.33.1, 0848.36.1, 0848.36.2, 0848.36.3.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-HQ-301

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Event. Conduct a tactical march.

Requirement. Battery has received an order to move to a new position. Battery commander has issued his movement order. A reconnaissance has been conducted. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. The battery conducts the appropriate tactical march for the situation.

Prerequisites. BT-HR-301.

External Syllabus Support. Two positions with sufficient road or terrain space and distance between them to achieve the march interval ordered.

Evaluator Checklist.

PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S):	<p>The battalion CP is displacing and the headquarters element must displace. Battery commander has issued his movement order. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities.</p> <p>Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Open column movement.2. Close column movement.3. Infiltration.4. Terrain march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point.
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground (blocked and unblocked), and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with each organic M2 and MK19 machinegun being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
11		Battalion maintains continuous command and control of subordinate units.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march.3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles.4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enemy detection is unlikely.b. Time is a critical factor.c. Considerable travel distance is involved.d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate.2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the unit is/has:<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Need for maximum command and control.b. Limited visibility.	

<p>c. Moving through built-up or congested areas.</p> <p>3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when:</p> <p>a. Enemy has good target acquisition means.</p> <p>b. Enemy has quick reaction means.</p> <p>c. Battery requires stealth in moving to a new position.</p> <p>4. Terrain March - movement may be by unit or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when:</p> <p>a. Open roads are congested.</p> <p>b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely.</p> <p>c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished.</p> <p>d. Soil conditions permit movement.</p> <p>e. Displacement time is not critical.</p> <p>f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position.</p> <p>ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN</p> <p>1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.</p> <p>2. If feasible, there are two air guards per vehicle, one scans the sky forward of the vehicle and the other scans the sky rearward.</p> <p>3. Machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.</p> <p>4. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.</p> <p>5. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.</p>		
EMPLOY AIR GUARDS		
CONDITION(S):	The unit is displacing. Enemy aircraft have been sighted.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Air guards are aware of signals for warning of air attack.
2		Air guards are assigned specific areas of scan.
3		Two air guards are posted in each vehicle, if feasible.
4		Personnel are capable of visually identifying enemy aircraft.
5		Air guards are rotated at least every 2 hours to maintain alertness.
EVALUATOR	None.	
INSTRUCTIONS:		
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.1.1, 0811.1.2, 0811.5.8.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-HQ-302

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters Regt - 300 Level (BT-HR-303) CRP 8.00

Event. Occupy a position.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Requirement. Advance party has completed the reconnaissance, selection, and preparation of new position. The main body has arrived at the release point. Battery personnel will conduct all actions necessary to occupy the position while maintaining control of subordinate units.

Prerequisites. BT-HR-301.

External Syllabus Support. A position approximately 600 X 600 meters, a regimental movement order and a squad size aggressor force (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

OCCUPY POSITION		
CONDITION(S):	Advance party has completed the reconnaissance, selection, and preparation of new position. The main body has arrived at the release point.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Crosses release point at specified time.
2		Maintains security during occupation.
3		Follows track plan during occupation.
4		Vehicle guides, order of march, and routes into the new position facilitate rapid occupation.
5		Positions vehicle(s) to allow for rapid displacement.
6		Battalion maintains continuous command and control of subordinate units. (KI)
7		Positive control of firing units is maintained throughout the passing of control between the main and forward command posts.
8		Designated sites are occupied.
9		Positions are improved as mission and time permit.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Either the main or forward headquarters echelon must maintain positive control.	

Included ITS. 0844.23.1, 0844.23.2, 0844.24.1, 0844.24.2, 0844.24.3, 0844.25.1, 0848.26.1, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.32.1, 0848.32.2, 0848.32.3, 0848.33.1, 0848.36.1, 0848.36.2, 0848.36.3.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-HQ-303

Simulation. No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters Regt - 300 Level (BT-HR-304) CRP 7.00

Event. Defend the battery.

Requirement. The battery is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability. Battery personnel conduct all actions necessary to defend the battery and safeguard personnel and equipment. A local security diagram must be produced.

Prerequisites. BT-HR-303.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, a training area with authorization to dig fighting positions and aggressor forces (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

MAINTAIN TACTICAL DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines take care to safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew-served, daily.
2		Marines employ their firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Unit leaders do not tolerate random wastage of ammunition.
3		Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
4		Supplies are safeguarded from enemy and from the weather, and are

		not scattered as litter on the terrain.
5		Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio direction finding (RDF) by unnecessary or repetitious message traffic. Standard prowords and brevity codes are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of rank.
6		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline. (KI)
7		Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline. (KI)
8		Marines wear the prescribed uniform, per unit SOP, during all phases of the unit's employment.
9		Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area and inspection of foot and body sores.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	With exceptions evaluators will use the 90 percent rule to determine whether requirements are being met. The exceptions will be communications, noise, and light discipline. These standards will stand literally. If a unit is located by RDF, or observed as a result of noise or light during every phase of the evaluation, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light and noise discipline and communications procedures when no aggressors or EW support is available from the evaluation staff. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline.	
KEY INDICATORS:	NOISE AND LIGHT DISCIPLINE 1. Standards identified as a key indicator because a 1991 "Trend" MCCRES Report showed this standard had a high unit failure rate; i.e., a negative trend has developed. 2. The number of lights are kept to a minimum and are tactically employed.	
CONDUCT LOCAL SECURITY		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations and is responsible for its own security. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Briefs and inspects Marines assigned local security missions.
2		Emplaces Marines and weapons in positions which offer good observation, fields of fire, concealment and cover, and which control enemy avenues of approach.
3		Employs local security measures that provide for early warning, continual observation counter-reconnaissance screening, and avoids the element of enemy surprise.
4		Considers active and passive OPSEC measures to prevent surprise and to provide greater security.
5		Positions elements to allow for their mutual support, emphasizing coordinated surveillance, exchange of information, coordinated fires, final protective fires, and fires to cover obstacles and dead space.
6		Plans primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.
7		Plans a defense in depth through the use of supplementary positions and the planned use of shifting fires into threatened areas.
8		Employs a series of natural and artificial obstacles to restrict, delay, block, or stop the movement of enemy forces.
9		Prepares a sketch of the defensive diagram.
10		Terrain features incidental to defense of the position area are depicted.
11		Incorporates the howitzers direct fire capabilities.
12		Coordinates defense with higher headquarters and adjacent units for mutual support, considering the fires of organic weapons, support from infantry mortars, artillery, NGF, and air.
13		Ensures flexibility is built into the plan through the identification of a reaction force, centralized control over supporting fires, shifting of fires, and supplementary positions.
14		Establishes observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's) and dispatches local security patrols.

15		Maintains dispersion of elements and individuals throughout the operation to avoid excessive casualties.
16		Maximizes use of surveillance devices in order to detect enemy movement.
17		Establishes communications between BOC, and/or local security chief and all automatic weapons positions.
18		Ensures critical signals are planned and understood by all Marines.
19		Uses available time effectively in the planning and preparation of defensive positions.
20		Patrols are not dispatched in repetitive or stereotyped patterns.
21		Patrols and other early warning means are used to fill gaps not covered by OP's and LP's.
22		Patrol routes are coordinated with adjacent units and higher headquarters.
23		Security elements report departure and return per established procedures.
24		Conducts a day and night rehearsal of the reaction force.
25		Disseminates combat information acquired by security elements throughout the unit, and as required to higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard. Evaluation should take place during a time when the unit is in a static position.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC CREW SERVED WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. The enemy has a night observation capability.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Primary, alternate, and supplementary firing positions are designated.
2		Weapons are positioned to provide overlapping sectors of fire.
3		Priority of fire is given to the most likely avenues of approach, and PDF's or FPL's are assigned to each weapon.
4		Range cards are prepared and when complete, guns are laid on assigned PDF or FPL.
5		The .50 cal machinegun has proper headspace. (KI)
6		The .50 cal machinegun has proper timing. (KI)
7		Sufficient ammunition is available and personnel are aware of ammunition resupply procedures.
8		Weapons are fired with a heavy volume of flanking and grazing fires at the sustained rate as soon as the enemy is within effective range.
9		Personnel are aware of immediate action in case of a weapon stoppage.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to all weapons and teams/sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>PROPER HEADSPACE</p> <p>Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Ease the recoiling parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting parts to the forward position. Pull the retracting handle and recoiling parts rearward until there is approximate 1/16-inch clearance between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Insert the GO end of the headspace in tight. Insert the NO GO gage. It should not go. If the NO GO gage does go, the headspace is excessive. Proper headspace is present when the GO gage goes and the NO GO gauge does not. A yes evaluation is awarded only if headspace is proper.</p> <p>PROPER TIMING</p> <p>Clear the machinegun and cock the firing pin. Insert the NO FIRE gage between the barrel extension and trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should not release. If the pin releases, the timing is early. Insert the FIRE gage between the barrel extension and the trunnion block. Press down on the trigger. The firing pin should release.</p>	

EMPLOY ANTITANK WEAPONS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy reconnaissance units embarked in armor vehicles have been detected operating in rear areas. Enemy forces are deployed in platoon sized units. Armor engagement positions are manned.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Armor engagement team positions are selected outside the unit area.
2		Primary and alternate positions provide observation over the main avenues of approach, and range to likely engagement points is known.
3		Personnel immediately employ weapons after identification of the armored vehicle and the vehicle comes in range.
4		Personnel are capable of obtaining hits on vulnerable points on the armored vehicle with 2 rounds.
5		Engages armored targets within 300 meters of the AT-4 positions.
6		The gunner is covered by fire from other weapons.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONSTRUCT FIELD FORTIFICATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team has occupied a new position area and will be in the position for an unspecified period of time.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Individual fighting holes and machinegun positions are prepared as rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
2		Ammunition, equipment, and personnel are protected from blast and small arms fire.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY ORGANIC WEAPONS FOR AIR DEFENSE OF THE POSITION AREA		
CONDITION(S):	Battery, section, or team is in support of tactical operations against an enemy who has air parity or limited local air superiority. Battalion S-2/3 has provided battery, section, or team with the air defense weapons control status, current density of enemy air sorties, and enemy air tactics. Enemy sorties consist of flights of two aircraft.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Battery, section, or team early warning outposts detect attacking aircraft.
2		At least one machinegun engages first overflight.
3		All small arms and at least 50 percent of machineguns engage second overflight.
4		Small arms and machineguns are coordinated in location and firing sequence to force attacking aircraft to fly through a wall of bullets.
5		Section or team chiefs designate proper aiming points for aircraft according to aircraft altitude, axis, and according to type of weapon being fired at aircraft. Section or team responds appropriately.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
UTILIZE COVER, CAMOUFLAGE, AND CONCEALMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The battery, section, or team is responsible for its own security. The enemy has a night observation capability. The enemy is employing a balanced mix of direct and indirect detection means.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Internal battery, section, or team operations and activities remain under camouflage to the maximum extent possible. (KI)
2		Personnel, equipment, and emplacements beyond the perimeter are concealed.

3		Camouflage materials and cover are correctly obtained, employed, and replaced. (KI)
4		Individual Marines demonstrate an understanding of the use of covered routes and covered positions.
5		Halted elements do not remain in exposed positions, instead move immediately into the nearest covered area.
6		Equipment, tentage, radios, and vehicle parking areas are sited to take advantage of any cover provided by natural terrain features.
7		Weapons firing positions are established in areas that permit the use of natural cover.
8		All individual Marines and crew-served weapons elements make use of available material to improve cover, including overhead cover.
9		Vehicles are prepared for concealment with appropriate screening material and the use of natural camouflage. (KI)
10		Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate screening material or concealed with natural material.
11		Individual and crew-served weapons firing positions are camouflaged to prevent enemy detection.
12		Organization stresses placement of men and materiel in areas that are concealed from casual detection by enemy air assets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Evaluator will use the 90 percent rule.2. This task is applicable throughout the operation.3. Battery, section, or team is permitted to use available vegetation for camouflage and concealment.4. Some standards may not be applicable to teams and sections independently deployed wherein their small T/O and/or limited T/E cannot support accomplishment of the standard.	
KEY INDICATORS:	VEHICLES <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Must have any light colored tactical markings dulled or covered.2. Must have reflected surfaces dulled or covered (mirrors and windshield may be removed or covered).	
CONDUCT CRATER ANALYSIS		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy shells have impacted. At a minimum, a lensatic compass and map are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Grid location of crater is determined to within 100 meters.
2		Direction of incoming round is determined within 5 minutes after the crater is identified in the area of impact.
3		Direction back to the firing weapon is determined to within 60 mils.
4		Shell fragments are collected and the type of weapons fired is identified.
5		Shelling Report (SHELREP) or an Artillery Counterfire Information Form (ACIF) is completed and transmitted to appropriate agency within 5 minutes after details are collected.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Evaluator will employ either a paper crater with fragments or have a crater dug in the area that is satisfactory for analysis.2. The enemy situation dictates that only hasty survey techniques can be used.3. Personnel of all elements should be evaluated.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM PREVENTIVE MEDICINE SERVICES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in position and facilities have been established.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Inspections are conducted on a daily basis of mess, troops facilities, and head areas.
2		Actual and potential health hazards are identified.
3		Immunization is provided.
4		Communicable diseases are identified and treated.
5		Measures of prevention and control of disease are recommended.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROCESS MASS CASUALTIES		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. Enemy fire, direct or indirect, has been received in the position area causing casualties.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate first aid knowledge in the treatment of fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
2		Marines lightly wounded apply self-aid.
3		Unit corpsmen conduct triage to maximize number of survivors.
4		Marines requiring evacuation are transported by man carry, litter, vehicle, or helicopter to treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner.
5		Casualty reporting begins immediately after a Marine is wounded, starting at the lowest unit level and terminating at higher headquarters.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator will tag at least 8 casualties per the instructions of the Senior Evaluator. Marines, including officers, who are tagged with incapacitating wounds drop where "hit". Marines tagged as incapacitated do not move under their own power, but rely on other Marines to carry them.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
REPORT INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy has been sighted. Information on enemy activity has become available and requires further action. Captured material has been received and requires further processing.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Information is reported to the unit or battalion as soon as possible after receipt.
2		Spot reports are forwarded using the SALUTE (S-size, A-activity, L-location, U-unit, T-time, E-equipment) format.
3		Procedures for processing captured documents and materials include: Documents and material are processed without delay.
4		Turns captured documents and materials into battalion S-2 intact and in the same condition as when received.
5		Documents are tagged and evacuated with EPW's.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROCESS EPW'S		
CONDITION(S):	The battery is in support of tactical operations. The unit's local security has captured enemy soldiers.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		EPW's are searched immediately after capture; weapons, documents, and items of potential intelligence value are tagged and evacuated at the same time as EPW's; personnel items, protective clothes and equipment are returned to the EPW's. (KI)
2		Individual Marines handling EPW's segregated them by type and sex - officers, NCO's, unranked, civilian combatants, etc. (KI)
3		EPW's are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
4		EPW's are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
5		Marines handling EPW's ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from the hazards of enemy fire.
6		Perishable information obtained from EPW's is reported immediately to higher headquarters.
7		Enemy casualties receive the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties with any difference in treatment based solely on medical reasons.
EVALUATOR	This task is applicable in all cases except those wherein the Senior	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator's instructions prohibit the capture of any member of the aggressor force or the introduction of actors into the exercise play.
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>SEARCH PROCEDURES</p> <p>1. Search. EPW's should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons and for equipment and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture, unless the number of EPW's captured, enemy action, or other circumstances make such a search impracticable. Until each EPW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.</p> <p>2. Equipment. Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously observed before may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of such equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to, all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.) clothing and rations.</p> <p>3. Documents. A captured document is any piece of recorded information that has been in the hands of the enemy. Only those documents that appear to be of particular intelligence value should be taken from an EPW upon capture. When such documents are taken from an EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom taken. In no instance should the personal identity card of an EPW be taken.</p> <p>4. Personal Effects. Except as indicated above, EPW's should be permitted to retain all of their personal effects including money; valuables; protective equipment, such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; badges of grade and nationality; and articles having above all a personal or sentimental value. When items or equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPW's as a security measure, they must then be receipted for and a record thereof maintained.</p> <p>SEGREGATION</p> <p>The segregation of EPW's by categories first requires that individual EPW's be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPW's to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPW's according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.</p>

Included ITS. 0802.5.2, 0811.1.1, 0811.2.13, 0811.4.1, 0811.4.17, 0811.5.6, 0811.5.21, MBST.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-HQ-304

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Battery - Headquarters Regt - 300 Level (BT-HR-305) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct a displacement.

Requirement. Battery is in position providing command and control facilities for the regiment. The tactical situation requires the battery to conduct a displacement. The battery conducts all actions necessary to displace by the most appropriate technique.

Prerequisites. BT-HR-303.

External Syllabus Support. A regimental movement order, helicopter support as required, two positions and aggressor forces (optional).

Evaluator Checklist.

CONDUCT A HASTY DISPLACEMENT

CONDITION(S) :	Battery is in position providing support to the battalion. The tactical situation requires the battery to conduct a displacement expeditiously. Little time is available to organize and conduct the displacement. This situation may arise as a result of an imminent enemy attack or because of a change in the friendly situation. The battalion has provided a new position area and route of march.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Minimum essential personnel, equipment, and vehicles are employed to reconnoiter the route, organize and prepare the position, and provide defense for the advance party.
2		Advance party assembles and departs for new position after battalion orders displacement. Daylight Darkness 7 minutes 10 minutes
3		The main body departs for the new position within specified time after battalion orders displacement. Daylight Darkness 20 minutes 30 minutes
4		Reconnaissance determines the route that maximizes trafficability and minimizes chances of detection and attack by enemy.
5		Advance party establishes entrance routes and locations which minimizes concealment problems and facilitates rapid occupation.
6		Elements close into the new position within the time frame specified by battalion.
7		Control of battalion passes to the battalion's forward headquarters echelon prior to displacing.
8		Maintains communications with higher headquarters.
9		Selected position permits the battalion to accomplish its mission.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. Time for advance party: a. Time Starts: When the battery receives the order to displace. b. Time Stops: When last element of advance party begins movement from position. 3. Time for entire battery: a. Time Starts: When battery receives the order to displace. b. Time Stops: When last mission essential vehicle begins movement from position. 4. Definition of "mission essential" for purposes of this evaluation - the vehicles and equipment necessary that provide the assets required for the unit to perform it's mission.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.5.7, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.2, 0844.24.1, 0844.24.2, 0844.24.3, 0844.25.1, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.32.1, 0848.32.2, 0848.32.3, 0848.33.1, 0848.36.1, 0848.36.2, 0848.36.3.
0802 ITS: Refer to BT-HQ-305

Simulation. No.

Reference.

Battery - Headquarters Regt - 300 Level (BT-HR-306) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct operations in an NBC environment.

Requirement. Threat forces have employed NBC, air, and ground attack in the area aimed at destroying /disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

measures must be used for survival of the unit. Battery personnel conduct those actions necessary to fight and survive in an NBC environment.

Prerequisites. BT-HR-301, BT-HR-302, BT-HR-303, BT-HR-304, BT-HR-305.

External Syllabus Support. A tactical scenario, NBCD T/E equipment and NBCD training devices. Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BT-HQ-306.

Included ITS. Refer to BT-HQ-306.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference.

Battery - Headquarters Regt - 300 Level (BT-HR-307) CRP 7.00

Event. Sustain the battery.

Requirement. The battery is conducting tactical operations. Battery personnel will conduct all actions necessary to maintain equipment, conduct resupply, and perform survivability tasks.

Prerequisites. BT-HR-303.

External Syllabus Support. An external CSS unit and a tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BT-HQ-307.

Included ITS. Refer to BT-HQ-307.

Simulation No.

Reference. FM 6-20-1, Field Artillery Cannon Battalion.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-501) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct expeditionary operations.

Requirement. The regiment has been alerted to support a maneuver force. The supported force's OORDER or OPLAN has been received. The regimental commander has issued his guidance that permits planning to proceed per doctrine. Intelligence information, transportation means and methods of supply have been determined. The regimental staff conducts all actions necessary to alert subordinate units, plan, deploy, and execute an expeditionary operation.

Prerequisites. None.

External Syllabus Support. Transportation assets and a training area suitable to employ the artillery regiment as required by the tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BN-HQ-401.

Included ITS. Refer to BN-HQ-401.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. ATP-38, Amphibious Operations.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-502) CRP 8.00

Event. Provide artillery support.

Requirement. The regiment is operating in support of a maneuver force. The force is engaged in combat, or combat is imminent. The regimental combat operations center is established. Command relationships of subordinate artillery battalions are established with elements of the force and tactical missions are assigned per commander's intent and applicable references. The regiment will perform all actions necessary to provide artillery support based upon METT-TS-L to include publishing artillery plans, plan future operations, monitor targeting, develop targets, provide counterfires, coordinate artillery fires, coordinate and conduct survey/meteorological operations.

Prerequisites. RG-HQ-501.

External Syllabus Support. A training area large enough to establish the regimental combat operations center, tactical scenario, commander's guidance, and a maneuver force operations order.

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BN-HQ-402.

Included ITS. Refer to BN-HQ-402.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. MCWP 3-16.1, Marine Artillery Support.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-503) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct command, control, communications and computer operations.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations or has been alerted to support a maneuver force. The regiment plans and coordinates deployment operations, monitors targeting operations, commands and controls artillery operations, provides fire support coordination center personnel to the maneuver force, maintains liaison with maneuver forces, develops and monitors survivability actions, monitors combat service support to subordinate units, and coordinates voice, facsimile and digital communications to higher, adjacent and subordinate units.

Prerequisites. RG-HQ-502.

External Syllabus Support. Communications equipment and documents, a tactical scenario and assigned higher, adjacent and subordinate unit combat operations centers established in a training area.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BN-HQ-403.

Included ITS. Refer to BN-HQ-403.

Simulation. CPX, CommEx. CRP 5.00

Reference. Combat SOP.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-504) CRP 7.00

Event. Coordinate combat service support.

Requirement. The regiment is operating in support of maneuver forces engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The regimental combat operations center is established. Regimental logistics personnel conduct all actions necessary to ensure the regiment retains the capability to conduct sustained operations. Actions include developing and executing logistics and maintenance plans, employing engineer assets to enhance mobility, survivability, utilities and counter-mobility. Transportation and movement requirements are planned and coordinated to sustain the flow of supplies and tactical units. Personnel and administrative services, medical treatment, casualty evacuation and food services are provided.

Prerequisites RG-HQ-502, RG-HQ-503.

External Syllabus Support. An external CSS unit and a tactical scenario.

Evaluator Checklist.

COORDINATE LOGISTICS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is conducting tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit has and applies a maintenance management SOP.
3		Logistic functions are considered in development of all tactical plans through assignment of priorities, allocation of assets, and identification of problem areas.
4		Attached elements included in all logistics planning.
5		Unit complies with basic loads established by higher headquarters.
6		Unit keeps stockpiles of materiel and ammunition dispersed within positions.
7		Unit transportation is controlled. (KI)
8		Emergency resupply procedures are established.
9		Logistics reports are included in reports control system.
10		Task organizes and moves required logistical support.
11		Conducts recovery operations.
12		Conducts organizational maintenance.
13		Conducts refueling/rearming/resupply during daylight and at night.
14		Conducts field mess operations.
15		Establishes and maintains communications with battalion COC/FDC, regimental headquarters, or CSS element as required.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TRANSPORTATION CONTROL</p> <p>1. Establishment of specific guidelines for all transportation assets accomplishes control.</p> <p>2. Control includes:</p> <p>a. Traffic control over particular routes.</p> <p>b. Dispersal of motor pools.</p> <p>c. Alteration of normal vehicle assignments for economical use.</p> <p>d. Camouflage and concealment of transportation assets.</p> <p>e. Enforced dispatch procedures.</p>	

COORDINATE CASUALTY TREATMENT AND EVACUATION		
CONDITION(S) :	The battalion is employed in tactical operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Both medical personnel and Marines who move casualties understand chain of evacuation.
3		Commanders at all levels demonstrate precise understanding of various priorities for MEDEVAC.
4		Corpsmen annotate tags affixed to casualties with data on treatment administered prior to evacuation.
5		Medical personnel are redistributed when corpsmen are declared to be casualties and are evacuated to the rear for treatment.
6		Casualty reporting is included in reports control system.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PROVIDE AND MAINTAIN CLASS V AMMO BASIC LOADS AND SUPPLIES		
CONDITION(S) :	Small arms ammunition required and maintained at the batteries require replenishment.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit SOP established.
2		Clear, concise guidance is provided on basic load.
3		Ammunition, to include explosive mines, grenades, and other associated items are available, accounted for and serviceable.
4		Requisition is forecasted and submitted to maintain the required supply rate (RSR), in sufficient time to prevent unnecessary overloading of resupply sources.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PICKUP AND DELIVER DESIGNATED CLASSES OF SUPPLY		
CONDITION(S) :	Supplies require distribution from battalion and other issue points to battery elements, as needed.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Supplies are obtained from authorized sources.
2		Proper quantities are received and issued per requisition instructions.
3		Timely schedule of delivery is maintained to minimize the probability of contamination or spoilage.
4		Appropriate security maintained to prevent loss, damage, or theft.
5		Delivery is made to proper battery elements as directed by requisitions.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
PERFORM TACTICAL MARCH		
CONDITION(S) :	Logistics section has received an order to move to a new position. Daylight reconnaissance has been conducted. Logistics officer/chief has issued his movement order. The enemy is employing a broad spectrum of air, ground, and target acquisition capabilities. Conducts one of the following types of tactical marches: 1. Open column movement. 2. Close column movement. 3. Infiltration. 4. Terrain March.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Type of displacement, march column interval, and march column configuration maximizes passive and active defense posture. (KI)
2		Crosses start point on time, reports to higher headquarters when

		crossing checkpoints, and designates a release point (if operating independently).
3		Crosses release point on time.
4		Maintains march discipline.
5		Maintains convoy interval.
6		Unit executes appropriate immediate action drill when convoy comes under attack by air, ground, and/or artillery/rocket/mortars. Attack may include NBC.
7		Supporting friendly fires to counter ground attacks is coordinated with higher headquarters.
8		March column is organized so that dispersion of available automatic weapons provides for delivery of heavy volumes of fire against ground/air attacks in all directions. (KI)
9		Maintains 360-degree security while on the march with any available automatic weapons being mounted and assigned a sector of fire.
10		Vehicles are appropriately prepared for convoy defense; e.g., canvas up, sand bagged, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. This task is to be completed two times: once in daylight and once in darkness. 2. A movement may be conducted as a road or terrain march. 3. Open and closed columns are not applicable to movement at night, since the blackout marker determines the interval between vehicles. 4. Evaluate each displacement and use the 90 percent rule. 	
KEY INDICATORS:	<p>TYPES OF MARCH COLUMNS</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Open column - a 100 meter vehicle interval is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy detection is unlikely. b. Time is a critical factor. c. Considerable travel distance is involved. d. Road network is uncrowded and adequate. 2. Close column - vehicle interval is less than 100 meters and is under circumstances similar to the open column except the section is/has: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Need for maximum command and control. b. Limited visibility. c. Moving through built-up or congested areas. 3. Infiltration - requires that vehicles are dispatched individually or in small groups without reference to a march table and is used when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enemy has good target acquisition means. b. Enemy has quick reaction means. c. Section requires stealth in moving to a new position. 4. Terrain March - movement may be by section or echelon and is conducted generally off the roads moving close to tree lines, along gullies, and close to hill masses when: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Open roads are congested. b. Enemy interdiction or air attack is likely. c. Ground reconnaissance is accomplished. d. Soil conditions permit movement. e. Displacement time is not critical. 	

f. Vehicle tracks may compromise the new position.		
ORGANIZATION OF THE COLUMN		
1. The column is organized to facilitate command and control as a first priority, and if possible so that vehicles at the head of the column occupy the deepest position in the new area.		
2. One air guard per vehicle is assigned.		
3. Consideration of LAAD coverage should be applied in planning artillery movements. If LAAD assets are attached, they are weighted at the front and rear of convoy as a first priority. Additional assets will be used to protect the middle of the convoy.		
4. Available machineguns are distributed evenly throughout the column and should be aimed alternately to the left and right sides of the route march.		
5. Canvas should be removed or set at half-mast to allow personnel to have their individual weapons poised to return fire if attacked.		
6. Key personnel are dispersed throughout the column to preclude the loss of a disproportionate number as a result of enemy action.		
PERFORM ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE ON ORGANIC EQUIPMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Emergency and routine repair is required. The unit has received equipment repair parts.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Performs emergency repairs on equipment disabled and beyond the repair capability of the operator/crew.
2		Preventive maintenance services are scheduled for organic equipment and performed on time and accurately.
3		Record maintenance actions and logistical readiness actions on a daily basis or as required.
4		Turns in excess and unserviceable items.
5		Prescribed parts are correctly identified, authorized, stored, and secured.
6		Document register, record of demands, and other associated suspense files are properly posted and maintained.
7		Prescribed load list is adjusted correctly based on demand data.
8		
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Per the unit SOP and appropriate equipment manuals.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0811.5.10, 0811.5.11, 0811.5.12, 0842.5.1, 0842.5.2, 0842.5.3, 0844.7.2, 0844.12.16, 0847.1.32, 0848.13.16.
0802 ITS: Refer to BN-HQ-404

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. Combat SOP.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-505) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct NBC operations.

Requirement. The regiment is conducting tactical operations. An NBC attack has been made on friendly forces. The regiment establishes an NBC Control Center to survey, monitor and report the situation as required. Subordinate units require decontamination. Regimental personnel conduct all actions necessary to reconstitute the affected units, continue the mission and survive in an NBC environment.

Prerequisites. RG-HQ-502.

External Syllabus Support. NBCD T/E items, decontamination consumables and equipment, a tactical scenario and a training area large enough to establish a decontamination site.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

Evaluator Checklist. Refer to BN-HQ-405.

Included ITS. Refer to BN-HQ-405.

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. Combat SOP.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-506) CRP 7.00

Event. Coordinate intelligence activities and target acquisition.

Requirement. The battalion/regiment is conducting combat operations. The battalion/regiment combat operations center is established. Intelligence information is being received. The higher headquarters intelligence estimate has been received. The battalion/regiment must develop intelligence requirements, conduct intelligence preparation of the battlefield, publish and execute intelligence plans, direct and control target intelligence, perform target value analysis, monitor, recommend employment, and manage target acquisition assets.

Prerequisites. BN-HQ-402/RG-HQ-502, RG-HQ-503.

External Syllabus Support. Non-organic target acquisition assets, and higher, adjacent & subordinate combat operations centers providing intelligence information.

Evaluator Checklist.

DEVELOP AND PROCESS TARGET INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S) :	Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received. A radar team with a target production capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL: Y;N ;NE	
1		Target Processing Center is set up and performs its mission.
2		Target intelligence is developed rapidly enough to exploit targets.
3		All personnel actively seek information on enemy order of battle.
4		Coordination/liaison is established with the supported unit for processing and dissemination of intelligence.
5		Fire capability overlay is developed and maintained.
6		Receives and correlates the production of targets from: - CBR section - FO's - Crater analysis - Subordinate units
7		Interprets data to select targets and target indicators on the basis of the most current target selection standards and available sources.
8		Coordinates and disseminates data as quickly as possible to the appropriate element per established counterfire guidance from attack guidance matrix.
9		Establishes and maintains a counterfire reference grid (CRG) on: - Target production map - FDC situation maps - Order of Battle map - Weapons-locating radar section maps
10		Prepares and maintains a target production map and overlays.
11		Prepares and maintains the target card file.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP THE PLAN FOR EMPLOYING FIELD ARTILLERY		
CONDITION(S) :	The supported unit commander's guidance has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL: Y;N ;NE	
1		Field artillery plan is expeditiously developed based on each phase/major mission of the supported maneuver unit.
2		The plan contains detailed guidance.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP SECURITY PLAN		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's guidance has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Pursues an aggressive program to develop intelligence on threat force capabilities and intentions.
2		Ensures leaders at all levels integrate both active and passive security measures into all tactical operations.
3		Ensures that security procedures, which comply with rules of engagement, provide for the security of friendly forces.
4		Ensures plans reflect passive security measures such as dispersal, camouflage, hardening of positions, and the use of barriers and obstacles.
5		Directs the use of field expedient measures to protect against enemy lasers as well as directs the use of filters and basic laser eye protection.
6		Considers the use of deception measures such as dummy positions, misinformation, etc.
7		Ensures planned positions are either mutually supporting or have adequate fire support available and on call.
8		Reviews the type weapons and ammunition loads planned for subordinates.
9		Directs and coordinates aggressive local security program which includes patrolling, observation posts (OP's), listening posts (LP's), and other local security measures.
10		Ensures all convoys are assigned security personnel.
11		Establishes security reaction forces and procedures for communicating with, and transporting the forces.
12		Develops contingency plans to react to emergencies involving the security of subordinate units; e.g., mass casualties, terrorist acts, etc.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
MANAGE ASSIGNED RADIO NETS		
CONDITION(S):	Battalion operations has been designated as Net Control Station.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Maintains net discipline and control.
2		Ensures published SOP allows for deviations based on the needs of the tactical situation.
3		Monitors FM radio nets assigned to the battalion.
4		Initiates communications checks with subordinate stations only when required.
5		Opens the minimum number of nets necessary to meet traffic volume.
6		Directs subordinate stations to alternate nets as required by traffic volume.
7		Directs retransmission or relay station when required by the tactical situation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY COMMUNICATIONS DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is in position and communications are being established with internal elements, higher headquarters, supported unit, or reinforced unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes alternate means of communication to the extent of available resources.
2		Alternate means of radio communications are employed when available and feasible.
3		Established wire circuits are employed as the primary means of communications.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

4		Radio traffic is restricted to "mission essential" and "time critical" use.
5		Status of alternate means of communications is maintained and available to section personnel. (KI)
6		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	INFORMATION AVAILABLE INCLUDES: 1. Traffic diagrams on switchboard(s). 2. Status charts of alternate means and routes.	
PROCESS PLANNED FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit commander's scheme of maneuver, concept of operations, and the fire support plan has been provided.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Processes planned artillery support as rapidly as the situation requires to ensure delivery of fires when required. (KI)
2		Targets are given identification numbers.
3		Planned targets are assigned to units.
4		Determines a method of attack that obtains the desired results at the designated time.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Follows attack guidance matrix.	
PROVIDE TACTICAL SITUATION, INTELLIGENCE PLANS, AND LOCATION OF SUPPORTED UNIT TO THE BATTERIES		
CONDITION(S):	The tactical situation, plans, and disposition of the supported unit are available.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Provides planned scheme of maneuver and requirements for fire support.
2		Provides current situation.
3		Provides location of friendly units activities.
4		Passes all appropriate intelligence.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	As available, the above listed information maintained by the battalion is provided to the subordinate batteries.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
ADVISE SUPPORTED UNIT(S) ON ENEMY FIRE SUPPORT CAPABILITIES		
CONDITION(S):	As required by the tactical situation and needs of the supported unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Enemy order of battle is maintained to determine fire support capability.
2		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support capabilities (systems, ammunition, and target acquisition).
3		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support employment tactics.
4		Counterfire measures are recommended to suppress enemy fire support.
5		Surveillance operations are recommended to acquire targets.
6		Defensive measures are recommended to protect friendly personnel against enemy fire support.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Exploits all collection assets organic to the unit (e.g., NVG's, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
2		Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		the higher unit as well as theater assets.
3		Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the unit collection effort.
4		Formulates target lists and scheduling worksheet.
5		Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the unit. (KI)
6		Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
7		Monitors, approves/disapproves CFF's based upon commander's guidance.
8		Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage and casualties.
9		Establishes targeting procedures that ensure timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the list of targets.
10		Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
11		Records target data.
12		Complies with common target designation system established by higher headquarters.
13		Complies with attack guidance matrix.
14		Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the list of targets to include changes in the fire support means requested.
15		Forwards request for schedules to fire support assets to support the scheme of maneuver.
16		Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	TARGET PRIORITIES	
	Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission.	
ADVISE ON ARTILLERY TARGET ACQUISITION MATTERS		
CONDITION(S):	The requirement exists to advise the supported unit commander and staff on artillery target acquisition.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		The supported unit is advised of all artillery target acquisition assets/capabilities.
2		The supported unit is advised of all artillery target acquisition employment options.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT TARGET PROCESSING		
CONDITION(S):	The radar team/section is operating in the hostile mode in a tactical situation. The target acquisition annex to the supported units FA support plan has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		TPC records, process, and routes all hostile weapons locations. (KI)
2		TPC maintains the target production map with the appropriate overlays.
3		TPC gives cueing guidance to its radars.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Maintains all journals, target cards, and any records pertinent to target production.	
PLAN AND COORDINATE RADAR DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	Radar(s) is(are) required to displace while conducting tactical operations. General position areas have been selected.	

STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Movement is planned which supports the scheme of maneuver of the supported unit.
2		Supported unit is advised of movement.
3		Security requirements, time available to move, other traffic restrictions, enemy activity and coordination requirements are considered.
4		Movement order is issued verbally, digitally, or in writing. (KI)
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	The movement order should include: 1. Exceptions to the SOP. 2. Time the radar must be operational.	
TARGET PROCESSING CENTER (TPC) DISPLACEMENT		
CONDITION(S):	The artillery battalion is conducting tactical operations and must displace in support of the maneuver unit's concept of operations.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Prior to displacement, the Forward TPC solicits and receives from the S-3 or Radar Employment Officer, radar employment requirements and update to the current tactical situation.
2		Main/Forward TPC coordinate communication security and communication requirements.
3		Main TPC advises radar sections of COC displacement and ensures cueing, zones and sector of search are current.
4		From the forward position, the Forward TPC establishes communications on required nets.
5		Main TPC passes information pertaining to current tactical situation and radar employment to the Forward TPC.
6		Updates Situation Report from S-2, S-3.
7		Updates Target Production Map and overlays to reflect current situation.
8		Forward TPC assumes technical/tactical control of radar sections.
9		Main TPC displaces with the COC.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	1. Support requirements are coordinated with the appropriate staff members at the artillery COC. 2. This task is not to be evaluated independent of the COC. The standards can be evaluated during any COC displacement during tactical operations.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP AND MAINTAIN A TARGET PRODUCTION MAP		
CONDITION(S):	The supported unit's operation order has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Map is established with required overlays.
2		Map is updated continuously as the situation develops.
3		TPC personnel actively seek information to keep the map current.
4		Coordination and cooperation exists between the TPC, S-2 and S-3.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
DEVELOP AND PROCESS TARGET INFORMATION		
CONDITION(S):	Enemy intelligence/combat information has been received.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		TPC has assumed tactical/technical control of the radar sections.
2		Target intelligence is developed rapidly enough to exploit targets.
3		Coordination/liaison is established with the supported unit for processing and dissemination of intelligence.
4		Receives and correlates the production of targets from: - Radar sections - S-2

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

		- FO's - Crater analysis - Subordinate, adjacent and senior units
5		Interprets data to select targets and target indicators on the basis of the most current target selection standards.
6		Coordinates and disseminates data as quickly as possible to the appropriate element per the attack guidance matrix.
7		Prepares and maintains a situation map and overlays.
8		Prepares and maintains a target card file.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
MANAGE RADIO CIRCUITS		
CONDITION(S):	The TPC has been designated as Net Control Station for the Radar Intelligence Net.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Maintains net discipline.
2		Initiates communication checks with subordinate stations only when required.
3		Directs subordinate stations to alternate nets, as required.
4		Directs retransmission or relay station when required by the tactical situation.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
EMPLOY COMMUNICATIONS DISCIPLINE		
CONDITION(S):	The TPC is operational and communications are established with radar sections and supported units.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Establishes alternate means of communication to the extent of available resources.
2		Alternate means of radio communications are employed when available and feasible.
3		Radio traffic is restricted to "Mission Essential" and "Time Critical" use.
4		Status of alternate means of communications is maintained.
5		Maximizes use of brevity codes.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE EFFORTS		
CONDITION(S):	The battalion is employed in tactical operations. A radar team and TP capability is attached to the artillery battalion.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Unit has and applies a combat SOP.
2		Unit safeguards classified material.
3		Unit stresses intelligence awareness. (KI)
4		Available intelligence assets are integrated. (KI)
5		Intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
6		Representatives from intelligence section debrief patrols.
7		Unit enters intelligence communications nets of higher headquarters.
8		Intelligence data maps are maintained to keep unit commander abreast of intelligence situation and enemy order of battle.
9		Submits information requirements to higher headquarters.
10		Intelligence reporting made part of reports control system.
11		Target processing element processes all counterfire information.
12		S-2 processes all intelligence information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	Evaluator examines unit performance in this task throughout all phases of the exercise.	
KEY INDICATORS:	INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS 1. Effective intelligence awareness is far more than an emphasis on the	

	<p>safeguarding of classified material. It requires participation in intelligence matters by every Marine within the unit.</p> <p>2. Some indicators of awareness are:</p> <p>a. Knowledge of collection means available.</p> <p>b. Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.</p> <p>c. Emphasis at all levels on OPSEC.</p> <p>d. Exploitation of information gleaned from enemy prisoners of war (EPW's).</p> <p>e. Development of relevant information requirements.</p> <p>INTEGRATION OF INTELLIGENCE ASSETS</p> <p>1. The intelligence effort requires a collection plan that ensures the use of available assets to include every assigned Marine.</p> <p>2. Assets to be integrated include:</p> <p>a. Survey teams.</p> <p>b. Local security patrols.</p> <p>c. OP's.</p> <p>d. LP's.</p> <p>e. Sensors.</p> <p>f. Night vision devices.</p> <p>g. AN/TPQ-46.</p>
--	--

Included ITS. 0802.16.8, 0802.16.2, 0802.1.3, 0802.16.4, 0803.3.1, 0803.3.2, 0803.3.3, 0803.3.4, 0842.1.1, 0842.1.2, 0842.1.3, 0842.1.4, 0842.3.9, 0844.20.1, 0844.20.3, 0844.20.4, 0844.21.1, 0844.21.2, 0844.21.3, 0844.21.4, 0844.21.5, 0844.23.1, 0844.23.3, 0844.27.1, 0844.27.2, 0848.16.1, 0848.25.1, 0848.25.2, 0848.25.3, 0848.26.2, 0848.26.3, 0848.27.1, 0848.28.2, 0848.29.1, 0848.29.2, 0848.29.3, 0848.30.14, 0848.31.1, 0848.31.2, 0848.31.3, 0848.35.1, 0861.2.1, 0861.2.2, 0861.2.3, 0861.2.4, 0861.2.5, 0861.2.9, 0861.2.11, 0861.2.15, 0861.2.17, 0861.2.18, 0861.2.20, 0861.2.24, 0861.2.25, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.10, 0861.4.11, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26, 0861.4.27, 0861.11.3, 0861.15.1, 0861.15.2, 0861.15.3, 0861.15.4.

Simulation. No.

Reference. Combat SOP.

Regiment - Headquarters - 500 Level (RG-HQ-507) CRP 7.00

Event. Conduct fire support coordination.

Requirement. The regiment is operating in support of a maneuver force that is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. The fire support coordination center is established with the force combat operations center. Air, artillery, rocket, missile, and naval surface fires, electronic warfare assets, and organic mortars support the force. The FSCC personnel coordinate target engagement, targeting, fire support planning and fire support coordination in support of the scheme of maneuver and commander's intent.

Prerequisites. RG-HQ-502.

External Syllabus Support. Fire support assets, electronic warfare support assets, and a division operations order.

Evaluator Checklist.

ADVISE SUPPORTED UNIT(S) ON ENEMY FIRE SUPPORT CAPABILITIES		
CONDITION(S):	As required by the tactical situation and needs of the supported unit.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Enemy order of battle is maintained to determine fire support capability.
2		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support capabilities (systems, ammunition, and target acquisition).
3		Supported units are advised of enemy fire support employment tactics.
4		Counterfire measures are recommended to suppress enemy fire support.
5		Surveillance operations are recommended to acquire targets.
6		Defensive measures are recommended to protect friendly personnel against enemy fire support.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	
CONDUCT FIRE SUPPORT PLANNING		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Upon receipt of the warning order, begins initial fire support planning based on the commander's intent.
2		Requests available intelligence and combat information on the enemy.
3		Advises the infantry commander on how best to use fire support assets.
4		Participates in the preparation of the fire support estimate of supportability.
5		Conducts fire support planning concurrently with the development of the scheme of maneuver in either the offense or defense.
6		Recommends priorities of fires, allocation of assets, positioning of artillery and fire support coordination measures.
7		Identifies ammunition and target restrictions, Rules of Engagement (ROE) restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of fire support assets.
8		Provides guidance on the desired effects (i.e., suppress, neutralize, or destroy) on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available.
9		Makes recommendations to the maneuver commander on whether to fire preparation/counter-preparation fires.
10		Analyzes targets for engagement.
11		Determines the NSFS capabilities of the ships assigned in support, i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
12		Develops NSFS, air, and artillery estimates of requirements.
13		Consolidates overall fire support requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
14		Submits, during amphibious operations, a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities.
15		Submits overall fire support requirements for NSFS and artillery to the higher command in a timely manner.
16		Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace.
17		Develops plans for the employment of smoke.
18		Coordinates and gains approval from the appropriate source when considering the employment of FASCAM.
19		Coordinates and integrates subordinate elements fire support plans.
20		Examines all fire plans to ensure they conform to the commander's intent and support his concept of operations. (KI)
21		Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the commander for approval.
22		Publishes the battalion fire support plan as a separate supporting appendix to the operations annex of the operations order

		(Publication of a fire support execution matrix fulfills this requirement).
23		Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as boundaries, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, fire support coordination measures, and target locations for all prearranged fires.
24		Considers combat service support needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
25		Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.
26		Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, the positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
27		Plans for only essential targets. Identifies priority targets and makes plans to shift as the operation progresses.
28		Plans for fires to cover obstacles, barriers, gaps in friendly lines and flanks.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.	
KEY INDICATORS:	CONCEPT OF FIRE SUPPORT This concept provides guidance in the following areas: 1. General targets or areas that are of particular importance and against which particular supporting arms must deliver, or be prepared to deliver, fires. 2. Maneuver elements to receive priority of supporting fires during a particular phase of the operation. 3. Exclusive of exceptional reliance upon a particular supporting arm to support a particular maneuver phase or to accomplish a particular task. 4. Whether a preparation is to be fired, and if so, the approximate duration and intensity of such fires. 5. General guidance relating to restrictions on the use of fire support (surprise, conserve ammunition, restricted targets, etc.).	
FIRE SUPPORT ORGANIZATION/OPERATIONS		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and limitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
2		Establishes methods to disseminate the information required and requested by the subordinate elements.
3		Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
4		Identifies and disseminates PRF codes to be used.
5		Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications.
6		Maintains the status of all available fire support assets. (KI)
7		Maintains an FSCC journal.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Status maintained per unit SOP.	
EMPLOY FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION MEASURES AND PROCEDURES		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N;NE	
1		Provides recommendations for the establishment and location of fire support coordination measures.
2		Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of

		aircraft and the delivery of other supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets and firing positions for indirect fire support assets.
3		Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in cases of smoke, illumination, and/or fragmentation patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
4		Coordinates with adjacent or higher FSCC's for clearance if fires or the effects of those fires impact in another unit's zone or come within the constraints imposed by a higher FSCC. (KI)
5		Ensures that all fire support coordination measures are clearly marked on fire plan overlays and disseminated to subordinate unit commanders and FO's. (KI)
6		Plans the integration of air and surface-delivered fires using either formal or informal airspace coordination measures.
7		Produces and uses various aids in fire support planning and coordination; e.g., attack guidance matrix or target precedence list, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, fire support matrix and other support plans.
8		Ensures all fire support units are using a common method of timing.
9		Maintains adequate communications to facilitate fire support coordination.
10		Maximizes use of automated digital assets when available.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	Coordination performed as per unit SOP.	
EMPLOY TARGETING AND TARGET INTELLIGENCE		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Exploits all collection assets organic to the unit (e.g., NVG's, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
2		Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the higher unit as well as theater assets.
3		Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the unit collection effort.
4		Formulates target lists and scheduling worksheet.
5		Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the unit. (KI)
6		Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
7		Monitors, approves/disapproves CFF's based upon commander's guidance.
8		Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage and casualties.
9		Establishes targeting procedures that ensure timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the list of targets.
10		Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
11		Records target data.
12		Complies with common target designation system established by higher headquarters.
13		Complies with attack guidance matrix.
14		Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the list of targets to include changes in the fire support means requested.
15		Forwards request for schedules to fire support assets to support the scheme of maneuver.
16		Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

KEY INDICATORS:	TARGET PRIORITIES	
	Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission.	
PLAN FOR EMPLOYMENT OF FIRE SUPPORT		
CONDITION(S):	A maneuver regiment/battalion is conducting tactical operations. Air, artillery, NSFS, EW, and organic mortars support the unit. The operations can occur during daylight and under limited visibility conditions.	
STANDARDS:	EVAL:Y;N ;NE	
1		Makes recommendations for the operational employment of Unmanned Aerial Vehicles (UAV's) for target acquisition and damage assessment.
2		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that planned artillery positions support the scheme of maneuver.
3		Submits recommendations for the positioning and zones of fire for NSFS.
4		Integrates the plan for the delivery of naval surface fire support.
5		Recommends allocation of final protective fires (FPF's).
6		Coordinates with the artillery commander to ensure that adequate ammunition is available to accommodate the fire support plan.
7		Coordinates time and location to register any fire support asset.
8		Issues target attack guidance and engagement criteria to FO teams.
9		Tasks the most effective fire support means to attack targets with the highest priority.
10		Coordinates the routes and times for movement of artillery within the area of operations.
11		Provides schedules of fire support to subordinate elements, as required.
12		Recommends allocation of priority of fires and priority targets.
EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS:	None.	
KEY INDICATORS:	None.	

Included ITS. 0840.2.5, 0840.2.6, 0840.2.7, 0840.2.8, 0840.2.9, 0840.2.11, 0840.2.12, 0840.2.13, 0840.2.14, 0840.2.15, 0840.2.18, 0840.2.19, 0840.2.20, 0840.2.21, 0840.2.22, 0840.2.23, 0861.4.1, 0861.4.2, 0861.4.3, 0861.4.4, 0861.4.5, 0861.4.6, 0861.4.7, 0861.4.8, 0861.4.9, 0861.4.10, 0861.4.12, 0861.4.13, 0861.4.14, 0861.4.15, 0861.4.16, 0861.4.17, 0861.4.18, 0861.4.19, 0861.4.20, 0861.4.21, 0861.4.22, 0861.4.23, 0861.4.24, 0861.4.25, 0861.4.26, 0861.4.27
0802 ITS: Refer to BN-HQ-407

Simulation. Yes. CRP 5.00

Reference. MCWP 3-16, Fire Support Coordination.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)

MCO 3501.26A
11 Apr 00

This page left intentionally blank.

Appendix A to
ENCLOSURE (2)